# Weatherization Field Guide For Missouri





MISSOURI DEPARTMENT OF NATURAL RESOURCES

# Weatherization Field Guide For Missouri



### Produced for the Weatherization Assistance Program of the Missouri Department of Natural Resources

Written by John Krigger and Chris Dorsi Illustrations by John Krigger, Bob Starkey, Marty Lord, and Steve Hogan

Saturn technical consultants: R.W. Davis, Bruce Manclark, Ken Tohinaka, Bill Vandermeer, and Bob Davis

State technical reviewers: Ron Wyse, Larry Sapp, and Ted Koenig

Agency technical reviewers: Dale Noland, Terry Sanders, John Quimby, Mike Baker, Patti Magruder, David Miller, Steve Cobb, Todd Steinmann, and Teresa House

This Field Guide outlines procedures for improving the comfort, safety, efficiency, and durability of existing homes.



Copyright 2005 • Saturn Resource Management, Inc.
Helena, Montana • Printed in the USA

#### **FOREWORD**

This Weatherization Field Guide for Missouri provides technical guidance on effective weatherization practices that are consistent with published Missouri Technical Standards and Weatherization Guidelines. This guide results from a partnership among the Department of Natural Resources' Energy Center, the Weatherization Technical Workgroup, and Saturn Resource Management, Inc.

Weatherization is a collection of procedures designed to reduce energy waste, improve the comfort and durability of homes, and enhance the health and safety of occupants. Most weatherization is funded for the purpose of energy conservation. The Department of Energy and State Weatherization Administrators issue requirements for how to spend tax dollars on weatherization. The top priority for those with oversight responsibility is the cost-effectiveness of each and every weatherization job. To this end standards and guidelines have been published. The Missouri Technical Standards and other published guidelines remain the source for guidance on allowable measures and expenditures.

Performing all the procedures in this guide on any one dwelling would be unnecessary and cost prohibitive. This guide contains recommendations and guidance for improving energy efficiency in existing homes, based on currently recognized "best practices", and is designed to complement the Weatherization Technical Standards.

The editors and technical reviewers have included a number of procedures and tests that we know will not be implemented by every weatherization provider. Moreover, program rules and the current level of funding will not allow implementation of some of the best practices described herein. However, we recognize the success of the Missouri Weatherization Network in securing other funding sources to implement measures beyond the scope of the DOE/Missouri Energy Center program.

This *Field Guide* is designed to be a changeable and constantly improving document. Your comments, questions, and constructive criticism will be important to its future.

#### **TABLE OF CONTENTS**

#### **Chapter 1: Health and Safety**

Carbon monoxide and smoke ala Moisture problems Lead-safe weatherization Electrical safety	
Worker health and safety Commitment to safety New employees Driving Lifting and back injuries Respiratory health Hazardous materials Falls. Tool safety	
Chapter 2: Auditing, Educa Baseload Meas	
Chapter 2: Auditing, Educa Baseload Meas	ation, and ures
,	ation, and ures

Test combustion appliances	
Final inspection	44
Client education	45 46
Water-heating measures.  Water heater blankets.  Hot water pipe insulation.  Water heater replacement.  Water-saving shower heads.	50 51 51
Refrigerator measures	53
Lighting measures	55
Chapter 3: Air Sealing and Insulating	
	60 61

### Chapter 5: HVAC Service to Optimize Energy Efficiency

The house as a system
Combining quality service with energy efficiency 150
Equipment sizing and selection
Chapter 6: Combustion Safety and Efficiency Testing
Gas burner testing
Leak-testing gas piping
Gas range and oven safety
Oil-burner safety and efficiency
Inspecting furnace heat exchangers
Chapter 7: Draft, Venting, and Combustion Air
Measuring draft       17         Combustion Appliance Zone (CAZ) Test       17         Improving inadequate draft       18
Venting combustion gases

Wood-heating venting and safety	99
Combustion air	203
Chapter 8: Replacement Specs and Hydronic Heating	
Furnace replacement	10
Oil-fired heating installation 2	12
Gas-fired heating installation 2	14
Electric-furnaces and electric baseboard heat 2	15
Hydronic and steam standards2Boiler efficiency and maintenance2Hot-water space-heating2Steam heating2Boiler replacement2	216 217 219
Electric heating	25 26
Furnace operating standards	<del>==</del>
Duct air-tightness standards	.35 .35 .37 .39

Sealing duct leaks	243
Duct insulation	246
Improving duct airflow	248 249
Measuring and evaluating system airflow  Duct-blower airflow measurement.  Flow-plate method for measuring system airflow.  Measuring airflow with a flow hood.  Measuring total external static pressure.  Static-pressure drop across coil or filter  Carrier® temperature-split method.	255 258 259 260 262
Chapter 10: Mechanical Cooling and Heat Pumps	
Cleaning air-conditioning coils	267
Cleaning room ac and heat pump coils	267 269 270 271 272 277
Cleaning room ac and heat pump coils	267 269 270 271 272 277
Cleaning room ac and heat pump coils	267 269 270 271 272 2277 2279

	Belly pressure test	291
	Mobile home insulation	293
	Mobile home windows and doors	300 301
	Cool roofs for mobile homes	302
	Mobile home skirting	304
	Appendices	
=	, , la la esta esta esta esta esta esta esta est	
	Tools for Air Sealing and Insulating	306
=		
	Tools for Air Sealing and Insulating	307
	Tools for Air Sealing and Insulating  Tools for Auditing and Mechanical	307 308
=	Tools for Air Sealing and Insulating	307 308 309
	Tools for Air Sealing and Insulating  Tools for Auditing and Mechanical  Weatherization Materials  R-values for Common Materials	307 308 309 310
	Tools for Air Sealing and Insulating Tools for Auditing and Mechanical	307 308 309 310 311

#### CHAPTER 1: HEALTH AND SAFETY

This chapter introduces some of the most pressing hazards that your clients face in their homes, as well as those you face at work as a weatherization specialist.

When weatherization crews discover serious safety problems in a customer's home, they should inform the customer about the hazards and suggest how to eliminate them. Major hazards and potentially life-threatening conditions should be corrected before weatherization installers begin work in the dwelling unless the installers are making the corrections as part of their work.

#### Non-weatherization hazards

Weatherization specialists should also be aware of home health and safety hazards that aren't directly related to weatherization. Household accidents are reported to kill 24,000 Americans and injure another 3,500,000 each year. Children are at the greatest risk because they spend more time at home and are less aware of danger than adults.

Note these three leading causes of injuries in the home, and help your clients learn to avoid them.

- Falls
- Poisoning by solids and liquids
- Smoke inhalation and burns from fires

#### 1.1 CLIENT HEALTH AND SAFETY

House fires, carbon monoxide poisoning, moisture problems, and lead-paint poisoning are the most important health and safety problems that are related to weatherization work. When these are noted in the home, inform the customer verbally and in writing as appropriate.

- ✓ Inspect the home for fire hazards such as improperly installed electrical equipment, flammable materials stored near combustion appliances, or malfunctioning heating appliances. Discuss the problems with the client, and perform repairs if possible.
- Test combustion appliances for carbon monoxide production and other related hazards. Test the ambient air for carbon monoxide. Solve the problems causing these hazards.
- ✓ Find moisture problems and discuss them with the client. Never make moisture problems worse. *See page 18*.
- ✔ Practice lead-safe weatherization. See page 23.

Some hazards aren't related to weatherization but are included here because they pose a great statistical danger to occupants. Encourage clients to observe these recommendations.

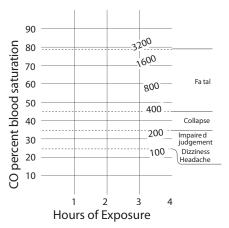
- ✓ Install non-slip grip strips to bathtubs and showers and steps to prevent falls.
- Make sure that sturdy step stools and ladders are handy where they may be needed for safe climbing.
- Remove obstacles that could cause slips and falls.
- Store poisons separately from medicines to prevent accidental poisoning.
- ✔ Repair or replace faulty electrical cords and appliances.
- Check smoke detectors regularly. Make a fire escape plan for the family.

#### **CARBON MONOXIDE**

Carbon monoxide (CO) is released by combustion appliances, automobiles, and cigarettes as a product of incomplete combustion. CO is the largest cause of injury and death in the U.S. from gas poisoning, resulting in more than 500 deaths per year. Additional people are injured or sickened by lower concentrations of

the gas. The symptoms of low-level CO exposure are similar to the flu, and may go unnoticed.

CO blocks the oxygen-carrying capacity of the blood's hemoglobin, which carries vital oxygen to the tissues. At low concentrations (5-to-50 ppm), CO reduces nerve reaction time and causes mild drowsiness, nausea, and headaches. Higher concentrations (50-to-3000 ppm) lead to severe headaches, vomiting, and even death if the high concentration persists. The effects of CO poisoning are usually reversible, except for expo-



**Effects of CO:** This graphs curves represent different exposure levels in parts per million.

sure to very high levels, which can cause brain damage.

The EPA's suggested maximum 8-hour exposure is 9 ppm in room air. Room levels of CO at or above 9 ppm are usually associated with the use of malfunctioning combustion appliances within the living space, although cigarette smoking or automobile exhaust are also common CO sources.

#### Causes of carbon monoxide

CO is a common problem in low-income housing, affecting 20% or more of residential buildings in some regions. Offending appliances include: unvented gas space heaters, kerosene space heaters, backdrafting vented space heaters, gas ranges, leaky wood stoves, and automobiles idling in attached garages or near the home. Central furnaces and boilers that backdraft may also lead to high levels of CO, but are less of a problem because they aren't usually located in the living space.

#### Testing for carbon monoxide

The most common CO-testing instruments are electronic sensors with a digital readout in parts per million (ppm). Follow the manufacturer's recommendations on zeroing the meter—usually by exposing the meter to clean air. CO testers usually need re-calibration every 6 months or so, using factory-specified procedures.

CO is normally tested near the flame or at the exhaust port of the heat exchanger. CO is usually caused by one of the following.

- Overfiring
- Backdrafting of combustion gases smothering the flame
- Flame interference by an object (a pan over a gas burner on a range top, for example)
- Inadequate combustion air
- Flame interference by moving air
- Misalignment of the burner

Heating equipment service should strive to identify and correct these problems.

#### **CARBON MONOXIDE AND SMOKE ALARMS**

All homes should have at least one smoke alarm on each level, including one near the combustion zone and at least one near the bedrooms. Carbon monoxide (CO) alarms are appropriate whenever the CO hazard is considered a likely occurrence.

Customers should be educated about the purpose and features of the alarms and what to do if an alarm sounds. Follow these specifications when installing CO alarms and smoke alarms.

#### **CO alarms**

CO alarm should be installed when a combustion appliance causes an increased concern of CO levels rising above safe limits

and in all homes where a furnace return air could backdraft a space heater, wood stove, fireplace, or water heater.

Observe these specifications when installing CO alarms.

- ✓ Install according to the manufacturer's instructions
- Connect to a circuit that is energized at all times

Don't install CO alarms in these cases.

- In a room that may get too hot or cold for alarm to function properly
- Within 5 feet of a combustion appliance, vent, or chimney
- Within 5 feet of a storage area for vapor-producing chemicals
- Within 12 inches of exterior doors and windows
- Within a furnace closet or room
- With an electrical connection to a switched circuit
- With a connection to a ground-fault interrupter circuit (GFCI)

#### **Smoke alarms**

Observe these specifications when installing smoke alarms.

- ✓ Install according to manufacturer's instructions
- ✓ If mounted on a wall, mount from 4 to 12 inches from the ceiling
- ✓ If mounted on a ceiling, mount at least 6 inches from the nearest wall
- Connect to a circuit that is energized at all times

Don't install smoke alarms in these cases.

- Within 12 inches of exterior doors and windows
- With an electrical connection to a switched circuit

 With a connection to a ground-fault interrupter circuit (GFCI)

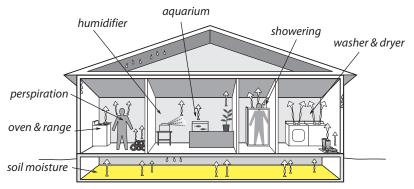
#### **MOISTURE PROBLEMS**

Moisture causes billions of dollars worth of property damage and high energy bills each year in American homes. Water damages building materials by dissolving glues and mortar, corroding metal, and nurturing pests like mildew, mold and dust mites. These pests, in turn, cause many cases of respiratory distress.

Water reduces the thermal resistance of insulation and other building materials. High humidity also increases air conditioning costs because the air conditioner must remove the moisture from the air to improve comfort.

The most common sources of moisture are leaky roofs and damp foundations. Other critical moisture sources include dryers venting indoors, showers, cooking appliances, and unvented gas appliances like ranges or decorative fireplaces.

Climate is also a major contributor to moisture problems. The more rain, extreme temperatures, and humid weather a region has, the more it's homes are vulnerable to moisture problems.



**Moisture sources:** Household moisture can often be controlled at the source by informed and motivated occupants.

Reducing sources of moisture is the first priority for solving moisture problems. Next most important are air and vapor bar-

riers to prevent water vapor from migrating through building cavities. Relatively airtight homes may need mechanical ventilation to remove accumulating water vapor.

Table 1-1: Moisture sources and their potential contributions

Moisture Source	Potential Amount Pints	
Ground moisture	0–105 per day	
Unvented combustion space heater	0.5 −20 per hour	
Seasonal evaporation from materials	6–19 per day	
Dryers venting indoors	4–6 per load	
Dishwashing	1–2 per day	
Cooking (meals for four)	2–4 per day	
Showering	0.5 per shower	

#### **Symptoms of moisture problems**

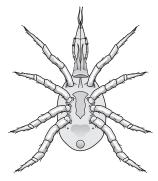
Condensation on windows, walls, and other surfaces signals high relative humidity and the need to find and reduce moisture sources. During very cold weather or rapid weather changes, condensation may occur. This occasional condensation isn't a major problem. However, if window condensation is a persistent problem, reduce moisture sources, add insulation, or consider other remedies that lead to warmer interior surfaces. The colder the outdoor temperature, the more likely condensation is to occur. Adding insulation helps eliminate cold areas where water vapor condenses.

Moisture problems arise when the moisture content of building materials reaches a threshold that allows pests like termites, dust mites, rot, and fungus to thrive. Asthma, bronchitis and other respiratory ailments can be exacerbated by moisture problems because mold, mildew, and dust mites are potent allergens.

Rot and wood decay indicate advanced moisture damage. Unlike surface mold and mildew, wood decay fungi penetrate, soften, and weaken wood.

Peeling, blistering or cracking paint may indicate that moisture is moving through a wall, damaging the paint and possibly the building materials underneath.

Corrosion, oxidation and rust on metal are unmistakable signs that moisture is at work. Deformed



**Dust mites:** Biological pests create bioaerosols that can cause allergies and asthma.

wooden surfaces may appear as damp wood swells and then warps and cracks as it dries.

Concrete and masonry efflorescence often indicates excess moisture at the home's foundation. Efflorescence is a white, powdery deposit left by water that moves through masonry and leaves minerals from mortar or the soil behind as it evaporates.

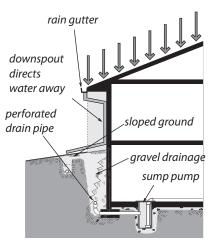
#### Solutions to moisture problems

Water moves easily as a liquid or vapor from the ground and into porous building materials like concrete and wood. A high groundwater table, for example, can channel moisture into a home faster than anything short of a big roof leak. The most common ground-moisture source is water vapor rising through the soil or liquid water moving up through the soil by capillary action. To prevent this, all crawl spaces should have ground moisture barriers.

A ground moisture barrier is simply a piece of heavy plastic sheeting laid on the ground. Black or clear heavy plastic film works well, but tough cross-linked polyethylene is more durable. The edges should be sealed to the foundation walls with ure-thane adhesive and/or mechanical fasteners. The seams should be sealed as well.

Rainwater flowing from roofs often plays a major role in dampening foundations. In rainy climates, install rain gutters with downspouts that drain roof water away from the foundation.

A sump pump is the most effective remedy when ground water continually seeps into a basement or crawl space and collects there as standing water. Serious ground-water problems may require excavating and installing drain pipe and gravel to disperse accumula-



**Stopping water intrusion:** A variety of measures can protect homes from water intrusion.

tions of groundwater between a home and the underlying soil. These expensive solutions should be reserved for homes with extraordinary moisture problems.

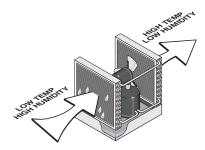
Avoid excessive watering around the home's perimeter. Watering lawns and plants close to the house can dampen its foundation. In wet climates, keep shrubbery away from the foundation, to allow wind circulation near the foundation.

Preventing moisture problems is the best way to guarantee a building's durability and its occupant's respiratory health. Besides the all-important source-reduction strategies listed above, consider the following additional moisture solutions.

- Install or improve air barriers and vapor barriers to prevent air leakage and vapor diffusion from transporting moisture into building cavities. See page 61.
- Add insulation to the walls, floor, and ceiling of a home to keep the indoor surfaces warmer and less prone to condensation. During cold weather, well-insulated

homes can tolerate higher humidity without condensation than can poorly insulated homes.

- Ventilate the home with drier outdoor air to dilute the more humid indoor air. However, passive ventilation is only effective when the outdoor air is drier than the inside air.
- As a last resort, remove moisture from indoor air by cooling the air to



**Dehumidifiers:** In damp climates, dehumidifiers protect many homes from excessive moisture.

air by cooling the air to below its dew point with compressor-based air conditioning systems in summer and dehumidifiers in winter.

#### Mechanical ventilation

Ventilation is an important health and safety management systems in the most efficient and airtight homes. These efficient homes have a blower-door-measured air-leakage rate lower than the Building Airflow Standard discussed in "Building Airflow Standards (BAS)" on page 5-15. Ventilation is also important in homes with pollutant sources such as smokers, new furniture, or new carpet. Homes with a natural air-change rate lower than the Building Airflow Standard should have mechanical ventilation systems installed.

Whole-house ventilation system do the best job of providing fresh air and controlling pollutants. These systems may include a heat recovery ventilator to minimize the energy loss from ventilation. But the higher cost of these systems makes them impractical for many homes.

At minimum, all kitchens and bathrooms should be equipped with exhaust fans. They should be installed according to these standards.

- ✓ Duct kitchen and bath fans to the outdoors with rigid metal or PVC ducting. Do not use flexible ductwork, and do not run them into crawl spaces or attics.
- ✓ Install tight-sealing backdraft dampers to prevent heat loss and reduce condensation during the off-cycle. Dampers can be located in the fan housing, in the vent duct, or in the termination fitting at the roof or wall.
- ✓ Don't install re-circulating range hoods. Their filters can't remove important pollutants such as carbon dioxide, carbon monoxide, or water vapor. Duct range hoods to the outdoors.
- Install high-quality exhaust fans with a low noise rating.

A low noise level is important in encouraging occupants to use exhaust fans. The sound output of exhaust equipment is rated in sones, and these ratings vary from about 5 sones for the noisiest residential exhaust fans to about 0.5 sones for the quietest fans. Choosing an ENERGY STAR® labelled exhaust fan will ensure quiet, long-lasting quality equipment. The success of spot ventilation and whole-house ventilation depends on how much noise the fan makes. Occupants may not use the fans or may disconnect automatic controls if the fans are too noisy.

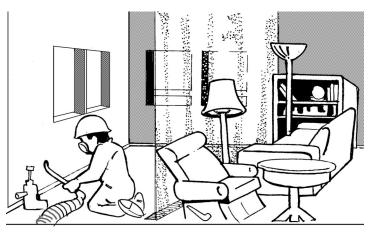
Exhaust fans can be used to provide whole-house ventilation if high-quality continuous-duty equipment is installed. Under this type of exhaust-only ventilation, outdoor make-up air enters the home through the un-planned pathways in the home's shell. Manual switches, dehumidistats, and/or timers are used to control the fan

#### **LEAD-SAFE WEATHERIZATION**

Lead-safe weatherization (LSW) is a group of safe practices used by weatherization technicians when they suspect or confirm the presence of lead paint. LSW practices focus on rigorous dustprevention and housekeeping precautions. Lead-safe weatherization is required when workers will disturb painted surfaces by cutting, scraping, drilling, or other dust-creating activities.

Lead dust is dangerous because it damages the neurological systems of people who ingest it. Children are more vulnerable than adults because of their common hand-to-mouth behavior.

Lead paint was commonly used in homes built before it was outlawed in 1978. Technicians working on these older homes should either assume the presence of lead paint, or, if they believe no lead paint is present, perform tests to rule out its presence.



**Protective tarp:** Protect clients and their belongings with disposable plastic sheeting when drilling, scraping, cutting, or blowing insulation.

Weatherization activities that could disturb lead paint and create lead dust include the following.

- Glazing, weatherstripping, or replacing windows.
- Weatherstripping, repairing, or replacing doors.
- Drilling holes in the interior of the home for installing insulation.
- Removing trim or cutting through walls or ceilings to seal air leaks, install ducts, replace windows, etc.
- Removing siding for installing insulation.

When engaging in the above activities, take the following precautions.

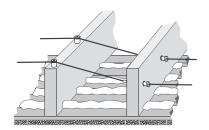
- ✓ Wear a tight-fitting respirator to protect yourself from breathing dust or other pollutants.
- ✓ Confine your work area within the home to the smallest possible floor area. Seal this area off carefully with floor-to-ceiling barriers made of disposable plastic sheeting, sealed at floor and ceiling with tape.
- Cover furniture and carpet in the work area with disposable plastic sheeting.
- Spray water on the painted surfaces to keep dust out of the air during drilling, cutting, or scraping painted surfaces.
- ✓ Use a dust-containment system with a HEPA vacuum when drilling holes indoors.
- ✓ Clean up as you work. Vacuum affected areas with a HEPA vacuum and wet mop these surfaces daily. Don't use the customer's cleaning tools or leave the customer with lead dust to clean up.
- ✓ Avoid taking lead dust home on clothing, shoes, or tools. Wear boot covers while in the work area, and remove them to avoid tracking dirt from the work area to other parts of the house. Wear disposable coveralls, or vacuum cloth coveralls with a HEPA vacuum before leaving the work area.
- ✓ Wash thoroughly before eating, drinking, or quitting for the day.
- Keep children and pets away from the work area.

For more information refer to the DOE publication *Lead Safe* Weatherization, A Training Manual for Weatherization Managers and Crews.

#### **ELECTRICAL SAFETY**

Electrical safety is a basic housing need affecting home weatherization and repair. Observe the following specifications for electrical safety in existing homes.

- Confirm that the electrical system is grounded to either a ground rod or to a water pipe that has an uninterrupted electrical connection to the ground.
- Assess the overload protection provided by fuses and circuit breakers. #14 copper



**Knob-and-Tube Wiring:** Prior to insulating around knob-and-tube wiring, barriers must be installed to keep insulation at least 1 inch from the wires.

- or #12 aluminum wiring should be protected by a fuse or breaker rated for no more than 15 amps. #12 copper or #10 aluminum should be protected by a fuse or breaker rated at no more than 20 amps.
- Install S-type fuses where appropriate to prevent occupants from installing oversized fuses.
- Perform a voltage-drop test to assess the size and condition of hidden wiring.
- Ensure that wiring splices are enclosed in metal or plastic electrical boxes that are fitted with cover plates.

#### 1.2 WORKER HEALTH AND SAFETY

The personal health and safety of each employee is vitally important to every weatherization organization. Injuries are the fourth leading cause of death in the United States, while long-term exposure to toxic materials contributes to sickness, absen-

teeism, and death of workers. Both of these risk factors are present during weatherization work.

Workplace safety standards have been established by the Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA) and by construction trade organizations; these should be observed by weatherization staff and their contractors. Safety always has priority over other factors affecting weatherization operations.

Some hazards merit the attention of weatherization agencies and their contractors because of their statistical importance. Be aware of these most common workplace hazards.

- Vehicle accidents
- Falls
- · Back injuries
- Exposure to hazardous materials
- Electrical hazards
- Repetitive stress injuries

#### **COMMITMENT TO SAFETY**

It is easy to become complacent about jobsite health and safety if it is not continually stressed. Weatherization agencies should do everything possible to create a safe work place by following these practices.

**Safety education:** Safety meetings are an essential part of a successful safety program.



- Arrange regular health and safety training.
- Conduct regular safety meetings.
- ✔ Keep equipment in good condition.
- Observe all state and federal standards relating to worker health and safety.

Safety requires communication and action. To protect themselves from injury and illness, workers are encouraged to recognize hazards, communicate with co-workers and supervisors, and take action to reduce or eliminate hazards.

#### **N**EW EMPLOYEES



**New hire:** New hires are several times more likely to be injured than are experienced workers.

New employees are several times more likely to injure themselves on the job compared to experienced workers. Before their first day on the job, new employees should learn about safety basics such as proper lifting, safe ladder usage, and safe operation of the power tools they will use on the job.

Supervisors must inform new employees about hazardous materials they may encounter on the job. They should be shown the Material Safety Data Sheets (MSDS) required by OSHA for each material.

New employees should be taught to use this common safety equipment.

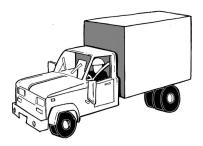
Proper clothing

- Gloves
- Respirators
- Safety glasses
- Hearing protectors

Alcohol and drugs should be banned from the job. Staff members should be encouraged to refrain from smoking and to stay physically fit.

#### **DRIVING**

According to the Bureau of Labor Statistics, one-third of all occupational fatalities in the United States occur in motor-vehicle accidents. Staff members should organize their errands and commuting to the job site so as to minimize vehicle travel.



**Safe vehicles:** Maintain vehicles in good repair. Drivers and passengers should always wear seat belts.

Vehicles should be regularly inspected and repaired if necessary. These safety components are most important.

- Brake system
- · Steering system
- Horns
- Headlights
- Directional signals
- Backup lights and signals

Workers should always wear seat belts. When traveling to the job, tools and materials should be properly stowed and secured in the cargo area to prevent shifting.

#### **LIFTING AND BACK INJURIES**

Back injuries account for one out of every five workplace injuries. Most of these injuries are to the lower back and are the result of improper lifting.

Workers often injure their backs by lifting heavy or awkward loads improperly or without help. Workers should be instructed in proper lifting techniques such as lifting with the legs and keeping a straight back whenever possible. To avoid back injury, employees are encouraged to get help before trying to lift heavy or awkward loads, to stay in good physical condition, and to control their weight through proper diet and exercise.

Supervisors should identify workers with limited lifting abilities because of weakness or prior injury and instruct them to avoid heavy lifting.

These policies help prevent jobsite injuries.

- Redesign work activities: adapt equipment and minimizing awkward movement on the job site.
- tive controls: perform strengthtesting of workers, set lifting limits, and provide training for all workers on the causes and prevention of back injuries.



**Awkward loads:** Ask for help when moving heavy or awkward loads.

#### RESPIRATORY HEALTH

Employees should wear a respirator when working in a dusty environment. Common household dust and construction debris can be full of toxins including lead, asbestos, fiberglass, and chemicals. Drilling, cutting, scraping can stir up toxic dust which may then be inhaled.

Workers should inspect and test their respirators to be sure they have a good fit.

- Check the straps and face piece to be sure they are soft and free of cracks.
- ✓ Put on the respirator and adjust the straps so they are snug but comfortable.
- Close the exhalation valve with a hand.
- Exhale gently and check for leaks around the edges.
- ✓ If there are leaks, adjust or repair the respirator.

Workers with beards, facial scars, and thick temple bars on eyeglasses must take special care to get a good seal.

Some airborne hazards require specialized respirator filters. Workers spraying two-part urethane foam, for example, should use a respirator canister designed to filter organic vapors, and they should ventilate the area where the foam is being sprayed. For areas like crawl spaces that are difficult to ventilate, workers should use a supplied-air, positive-pressure respirator.

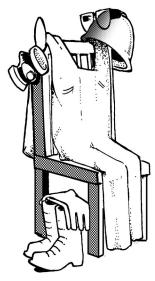
Workers should be taught how to recognize asbestos insulation that may be installed around older furnaces and boilers. The danger of carrying dust into their own home on their clothing should be stressed as well.

Weatherization workers should control dust in their client's homes by erecting temporary barriers when they are doing work that may release toxic dust. Workers should wear coveralls when entering attics or crawl spaces. Coveralls should be disposable or laundered professionally.

#### **HAZARDOUS MATERIALS**

Workers' health and safety can be threatened by hazardous materials used on the job. Workers often fail to protect themselves from hazardous materials because they don't recognize and understand their health effects. Breathing hazardous materials, absorbing them through the skin, and coming into eye contact with hazardous materials are common ways workers are affected.

OSHA regulations require employers to notify and train employees about hazardous materials used on the job. A Material Safety Data Sheet (MSDS) for every workplace hazardous material should be readily available to employees. Copies of MSDSs are



Personal protective equipment: Employees should own and maintain protective equipment to protect themselves from hazardous materials.

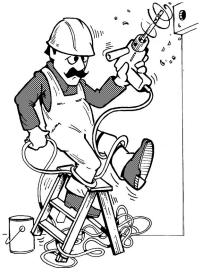
obtained from manufacturers or their distributors. Employees should know where MSDSs are kept and how to interpret them.

Employees should understand how to avoid exposure to hazardous materials used on the job and how to clean up chemical spills. Employees should be instructed to use the appropriate protective equipment that is recommended by the MSDS.

#### **FALLS**

Falls off ladders and stairs cause 13% of workplace injuries according to the National Safety Council. Falls from the same elevation such as slips and trips account for approximately 7% of workplace injuries.

Broken ladders, and ladders that slip because they haven't been anchored properly, are both major causes of on-the-job falls. Step ladders, for instance, are often used for work that is too far off the ground, forcing workers to stand on the top step or to reach too far.



**Ladders:** Ladders are the most dangerous tools workers use.

OSHA regulations include these important guidelines for ladder use.

- ✓ All ladders should be kept in good repair, and should be replaced if they have missing steps or cracked side-rails.
- ✔ Broken ladders should be removed from the equipment storage area.
- ✓ Extension ladders should be set to extend at least three feet above the area they access.
- Ladders shouldn't be set with a pitch steeper than four feet of rise for each foot the base is away from the building.
- ✓ Ladders must be blocked or tied firmly in place at the top and bottom if the above rule cannot be observed.

- ✓ Metal ladders should not be used where they may come in contact with electrical conductors.
- ✓ Ladders must be maintained free of oil, grease, and other slipping hazards.
- ✓ Ladders must not be loaded beyond the maximum load for which they were built.
- Workers should avoid carrying heavy loads up ladders and operating power tools from ladders.

Scaffolding must be used when working above-ground for sustained time periods. Scaffolds should be built plumb and level. Each leg should be stabilized so that it supports equal weight as other legs. This is especially important on unlevel ground. Planks should be secured to the structure and handrails provided on the sides and ends of the walkway.

Workplaces should be policed regularly to remove slipping and tripping bazards. Workers



**Good housekeeping:** Good housekeeping is essential to protect workers and clients alike from falls.

and tripping hazards. Workers carrying loads should establish a debris-free walkway.

#### **TOOL SAFETY**

The tools used in construction work are dangerous if used improperly. About 90,000 people hurt themselves with hand tools each year. One moment of inattention can cause an injury that can change a worker's life.

These basic safety rules can reduce the hazards of using hand and power tools.

- Use the right tool for the job.
- Inspect tools for damage before using them.
- Keep all tools in good condition with regular maintenance.



**Electrical safety:** Cords should be maintained in good condition. Special ground-fault-interrupter cords or outlets should be used in wet conditions.

- Operate tools according to the manufacturer's instructions.
- Use appropriate personal protective equipment.
- Use ground-fault-interrupter outlets or extension cords.

#### REPETITIVE STRESS INJURIES

Repetitive stress injuries are caused by over-working certain parts of your body. Poor body posture, such as reaching above your head when operating a power drill, can encourage these injuries. Good work habits help prevent this type of injury.

Use a comfortable arm and hand posture when operating tools for a long period of time.

- ✓ Change the angle and location of your work surface throughout the day.
- ✓ Mix your difficult tasks with easier ones.
- ✓ Carry smaller loads.
- ✓ Take short rest breaks periodically, and stretch any tight muscles during this time.

When you purchase hand and power tools, look for models with ergonomic designs that place less stress on your body.

# CHAPTER 2: AUDITING, EDUCATION, AND BASELOAD MEASURES

Energy-auditing has a logical sequence of steps. Decisions about which measures to install are determined by visual inspection, diagnostic testing, auditing experience, practical considerations, and the guidelines established by priority lists or energy-auditing programs.

The first section on energy usage describes how homes use energy, and shows how some simple baseload reduction measures can reduce electrical costs.

This next section on weatherization work flow provides a guide to the sequential process of weatherization. Completing the steps in each phase lays the groundwork for the next. Since no two dwellings are identical, the work flow will vary among homes. In some cases you may not need to complete each step, while in other dwellings you may perform additional tasks in order to best serve the household.

Client education is also covered in this chapter. A motivated client who uses the techniques described here can reduce energy consumption with or without any installed weatherization measures. If the auditor is persuasive enough about the benefits of energy-saving habits, weatherization efforts will be measurably more successful.

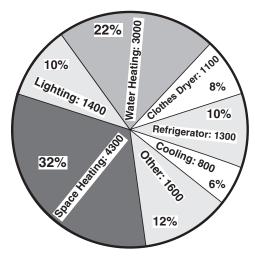
Finally, some simple baseload measures are described that are proven energy savers in almost every home. They don't require much analysis, and can often be installed as part of a weatherization audit.

## 2.1 Understanding energy usage

The first goal of an energy audit is to determine where energy waste occurs. With this information in hand, the auditor must then allocate weatherization resources according to the potential each measure has for producing energy savings. The greatest savings are possible in homes with high initial consumption.

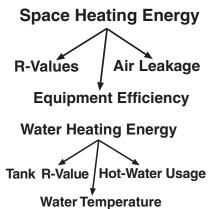
Energy usage can be divided into two categories: baseload and seasonal energy use. Baseload includes water heating, lighting, refrigerator, and the use of other year-round appliances. Seasonal energy use includes heating and cooling.

Improvable baseload and seasonal energy uses: In northern climates heating is the biggest energy user. But other energy uses can't be neglected in a comprehensive weatherization program.



A solid understanding of how homes use energy helps in the weatherization decision-making process. The graph below illustrates electrical consumption for an average home in a heating climate.

Each of the energy uses illustrated deserves consideration. Avoid getting too focused on a single consumption category.



Heating energy waste: Heating energy waste fits into three categories. The challenge to reducing heating costs is finding the largest pockets of energy waste and spending resources on the major problems.

Water-heating energy waste: The challenge to reducing water-heating costs is ensuring that all three waste categories have been improved.

## 2.2 THE ENERGY AUDIT

The audit should include, at minimum, the following activities.

#### **COLLECT INFORMATION**

Assess and record the existing conditions of the dwelling and its mechanical systems.

# **Dwelling exterior**

- ✓ Inspect the chimney(s) and exhaust vents. Note their location and condition.
- ✓ Inspect the condition of the roof, siding, windows, and doors.
- Inspect the foundation and note the amount of exposure.
- ✓ Assess the site drainage, and look for evidence of moisture accumulation.
- ✓ Note any additions to the dwelling.

## **Dwelling interior**

- Inspect for evidence of moisture accumulation such as mold, stains on the foundation or interior walls, or musty smells.
- ✓ Assess the type, thickness, and condition of insulation in the attic, walls, floors, and foundation.
- ✓ Inspect the wiring in the attic or other areas that will be affected by weatherization activities
- ✓ Look for major air leakage routes and bypasses.
- Measure building tightness using a blower door. Perform zones test as needed.
- Measure the building dimensions.

#### **Mechanical systems**

- ✓ Assess the clearance to combustibles of chimneys and vent connectors.
- ✓ Inspect the combustion appliances for signs of rust and corrosion. Check the slope of vent connectors, and compare the size of the chimney system with the input rating of the appliances served.
- ✓ Test all combustion appliances for carbon monoxide and adequate draft. Test the heating appliance for efficiency. Perform leak tests of all forced air and gravity heat exchangers.
- ✓ Test the ambient air for carbon monoxide.
- Inspect central air conditioners for leaks in the condensate tray and drain.
- Look for signs of water leaks in boilers and water heaters.

#### Client interview and education

- Interview client and discuss their use of the dwelling, any comfort issues, and any problems that were noted.
- Suggest simple energy-saving opportunities, and discuss health and safety issues.

#### **EVALUATE THE DWELLING**

Evaluate the possibility for energy conservation opportunities as well as energy-related health/safety problems.

## **Energy conservation**

- ✓ Identify potential opportunities for saving energy.
- ✓ Estimate additional costs for each proposed activity, such as wall or attic insulation. Total the estimated cost for all activities.
- Prioritize activities in order of their SIRs.
- Calculate the savings-to-investment ratio (SIR) for each potential measure.

## **Health and safety**

- ✓ Identify energy-related health and safety deficiencies which could be caused by or made worse by weatherization activities. Include mechanical and non-mechanical deficiencies.
- ✓ Determine the severity of the deficiencies, and whether there is an immediate threat to the health or safety of household members. Address emergencies immediately.
- Estimate costs for correction of deficiencies. Get bids as needed.

## **DEVELOP A STRATEGY**

Develop a strategy for improved energy efficiency and for correcting energy-related health and safety problems.

- Determine which energy conservation activities have an acceptable SIR.
- Identify deficiencies such as health and safety emergencies that should be corrected before beginning work on the building shell.
- Write work orders for all activities to be completed. Include sufficient detail to enable installers or contractors to adequately complete their activities.

## 2.3 WEATHERIZATION WORK FLOW

Though installation activities may vary from house to house, the following work flow for installers pertains to most homes.

#### **REVIEW THE DOCUMENTS**

- Review the work that is called for, and decide what materials will be needed.
- ✓ Note any mechanical work or repair that must be completed prior to the start of building shell activities.
- Determine the order in which activities will be completed.
- Clarify with the auditor anything that is unclear or incomplete.

## **INSPECT THE JOB SITE**

Before beginning work, tour the exterior and interior of the home to assess the job.

Confirm the information in the audit.

- ✓ Note anything not recorded in the file that could affect the job.
- ✓ Record any changes to the building that could interfere with the job.

Contact the auditor for further instructions or change orders if you note any of these situations.

- The heating plant or other combustion appliance is malfunctioning.
- Household members exhibit symptoms that could be from carbon monoxide poisoning. Open windows or evacuate the house if necessary.
- Conditions have changed in ways that would make proposed work difficult or no longer cost-effective.

#### REVIEW THE JOB WITH THE CLIENT

- Explain the work to be performed, and approximately how long it will take.
- Enlist the client's assistance for such things as keeping children or pets out of the way, or for moving possessions away from work locations.

#### **INSTALL THE MEASURES**

- ✔ Perform blower door and pressure diagnostics tests.
- ✓ Install building-shell and health and safety measures in the order prescribed by the audit.
- ✓ Test building tightness with a blower door after each of these activities: attic air-leak sealing, attic insulation, and wall insulation.
- Record blower door test results in the file. Record the materials and quantity that are actually installed.

## **TEST COMBUSTION APPLIANCES**

- Test combustion appliances under worst-case conditions.
- Correct draft problems where appliances fail to meet program standards.

#### **COMPLETE FINAL DIAGNOSTICS**

✔ Perform blower door and pressure diagnostics tests.

## 2.4 FINAL INSPECTION

Final inspections are required for all dwellings after all work is complete. Inspections ensure that weatherization services have been provided in a quality manner and that the home is left in a safe condition.

- Confirm that the specified measures are installed. Inspect the work to ensure that workmanship and materials standards are met. If insulation has been installed, check the bag count and coverage.
- Test combustion appliances to confirm that they currently operate in a safe and dependable manner.
  Include worst-case draft test.
- Perform final blower door tests if needed.
- ✓ Make sure that the job site is cleaned up.
- Call for corrective actions where initial work does not meet standards.
- Review all completed work with the client.
- Confirm that the client is satisfied with the work. Make corrections only within the scope of program rules and policies.

#### 2.5 CLIENT EDUCATION

Client education is a potent weatherization measure. A well-designed education program engages families in household energy management, and assures the success of weatherization measures such as compact fluorescent lamp installation, setback thermostat installation, or furnace filter maintenance.

Make note of the energy-saving behaviors that the client has agreed to perform during the educational visit. Review these with the client when performing the final inspection, and ask if they have any questions.

#### **REDUCE HEATING COSTS**

The auditor should explain the following practices for clients who use forced-air heat.

- ✓ Set thermostat back 5 to 15 degrees at night. Show the client how to use a setback thermostat if they have one.
- Check furnace filters monthly and change or clean them as necessary. Find the filter and demonstrate how to change it.
- Open all registers and don't obstruct them with furniture. Show them how to open the registers.
- Clean supply and return grilles periodically. Show them how.

The auditor should explain the following general practices for homeowners who have a hot water system for home heating.

- ✔ Check for air at the highest radiators. Open bleed valves until water appears.
- ✓ Note if there is discharge from the pressure-relief valve. This could mean a waterlogged expansion tank or excessive system pressure.
- Clean radiators or convectors.

✓ Hire a professional to clean and tune the system every 2-to-5 years.

## REDUCE HOT WATER AND LAUNDRY CONSUMPTION

The auditor should explain the following habits for reducing hot water and laundry energy costs.

Reach for the cold water tap: Unless you need hot water, use cold.

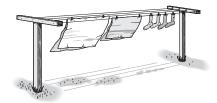


- Wash clothes in cold water unless warm or hot water is needed to get dirty clothes clean. Wash and dry full loads of clothes.
- ✓ Clean the dryer lint filter after each load. Show the client how to do this.
- ✓ Use the electronic or moisture-sensing cycle. Note the dial reading that gets clothes acceptably dry and use that setting consistently. Show the client how to do this.
- ✓ Remove lint and outdoor debris from the dryer vent termination. Show the client how to do this.
- ✔ Dry clothes on a clothesline during nice weather.

**Modern dryer dial:** Somewhere in the middle of the electronic or automatic cycle is the most conservative setting.



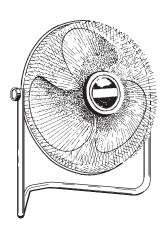
**Clothes line:** Drying clothes on a clothesline could save the average family up to \$100 per year.



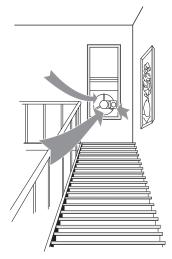
#### REDUCE COOLING CONSUMPTION

Advise your clients that they can improve their comfort and reduce air conditioning costs by taking these steps:

- Use circulating fans to improve comfort in rooms that are occupied during the day. Use ventilating fans to move air out of the house at night.
- ✓ Shut the house up and draw the drapes or blinds each morning.
- ✓ Set the air conditioner at the highest thermostat setting where it still provides adequate comfort.
- Close interior doors to limit the area cooled by room air conditioners.
- ✓ Turn off lights and appliances when not in use. They produce considerable heat.



Circulating fans: Floor fans, table fans, and ceiling fans create a wind-chill effect indoors, which can improve comfort and reduce cooling costs. Since no air is moved out of the home, you can use circulating fans at the same time that an air conditioner is running.

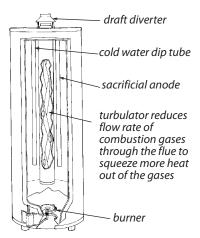


Ventilating fans: Window fans and whole-house fans are most effective when used at night to remove heat that has collected in the home during the day. Set them to exhaust air through a window that is high on the south side of the home, then open a window or door that is low on the north side to admit cool air. Close the house up tight during the day to reduce heat gain.

## 2.6 WATER-HEATING MEASURES

Observe the following general specifications for water heaters.

✓ Confirm that the water heater has a pressure-and-temperature relief valve and a safety discharge pipe. The discharge pipe should terminate 6 inches above the floor or outside the dwelling as specified by local codes. The discharge pipe should be made of rigid metal pipe or approved high temperature plastic pipe.



Standard gas water heater: This open combustion appliance is often troubled by spillage and backdrafting.

- Confirm that electric water heaters are serviced by a dedicated ele
  - viced by a dedicated electrical circuit.
- ✓ Adjust water temperature with clients' approval to 115°-120°F. If the home has a older automatic dishwasher without its own waterheating booster, set the thermostat to 140°F. Shut off power to electric water heaters before opening the access panels.





Electric

Gas

Setting hot-water temperature: Getting the temperature between 115 and 120°F can take a few adjustments and temperature measurements.

Inspect faucets for hot water leaks and repair leaks if needed. ✓ If you perform combustion testing for water heaters, follow the guidelines described in the Combustion Safety and Efficiency Testing chapter. *See page 157*.

## **W**ATER HEATER BLANKETS

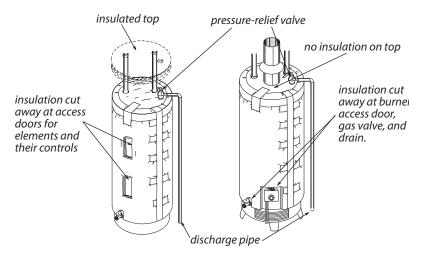
Install an insulation blanket on all heaters that are outside the heated space, unless the manufacturer's label prohibits it. Follow these guidelines to avoid fire hazards and to simplify future service.

#### Gas water heaters

- ✓ Keep insulation at least 2 inches away from the gas valve and the burner access panel. Do not install insulation below the burner access panel.
- ✓ Do not cover the pressure relief valve.
- ✓ Do not insulate the tops of gas- or oil-fired water heaters to avoid obstructing the draft diverter.

#### **Electric water heaters**

- Cut the blanket around the thermostat and heating element access plates, or cover the plates and mark their location on the insulation facing.
- ✔ Do not cover the pressure relief valve.
- ✓ Cover the top of the water heater with insulation if it doesn't obstruct the pressure relief valve.



**Water heater insulation:** Insulation should be installed carefully so it doesn't interfere with the burner, elements, draft diverter, or pressure relief valve.

## HOT WATER PIPE INSULATION

Perform these measures to slow convection of hot water into the water lines near the tank.

- ✓ Insulate the first 6 feet of both hot and cold water pipes. Use the correct size of insulation sleeve.
- Cover elbows, unions and other fittings to same thickness as pipe.
- ✓ Keep pipe insulation at least 6 inches away from the flue of gas or oil water heaters.

#### WATER HEATER REPLACEMENT

Existing gas water heaters typically use 250 or more therms per year. New gas water heaters use as little as 175 therms per year. A savings of 75 therms can repay the initial investment in 4-to-9 years at today's gas costs.

Any replacement gas or oil water heater should have an energy factor of at least 0.62 or have a minimum of 2 inches of foam insulation. Replacement water heaters should be wrapped with external insulating blankets for additional savings.

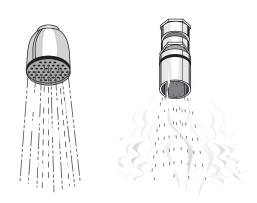
In tight homes or homes where the mechanical room is located in living areas, replacement gas or oil water heaters should be either power-draft or sealed-combustion units. Sealed-combustion water heaters are preferred in homes where the water heater is installed in a living space.

If the existing electric water heater must be replaced, the new unit should have an energy factor of at least 0.88 and be equipped with at least three inches of foam insulation.

#### **WATER-SAVING SHOWER HEADS**

Most families use more hot water in the shower than for any other use. A low-flow shower head reduces this consumption.

You can determine the output of an existing shower head by measuring the time it takes to fill a one-gallon plastic milk jug. Cut out the top to fit over the shower head, and turn on the water to full volume. If the jug fills in less than 20 seconds, the flow rate is more than 3 gallons per minute.



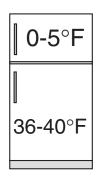
**Water-saving shower heads:** The showerhead on the right uses less water and so reduces water heating expense.

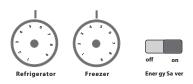
Replace high-flow shower heads with a water-saving shower head rated for a flow of 1.5 to 2.5 gallons per minute. Avoid installing the cheapest shower heads as they often provide a less satisfying shower and are prone to clogging.

Use caution in removing the existing shower head from old, fragile plumbing systems. Do not attempt to remove the neck that connects the shower head to the fitting inside the wall, but replace just the showerhead itself.

## 2.7 REFRIGERATOR MEASURES

The quickest way to reduce the consumption many refrigerators and freezers is to adjust the set-points. The refrigerator temperature should be  $36-40^{\circ}F$  and the freezer should be  $0-5^{\circ}F$  for optimal energy efficiency. Try the higher end of these temperature ranges to see if these settings are acceptable to the client. If they aren't, instruct the customer to reduce the temperature setting gradually until it is.





Refrigerator settings: Adjust refrigerator and freezer dials to achieve the temperature range shown. Turn the energy-saver switch on if not needed, and explain its operation to the occupants. When the Energy Saver switch is in the "On" position, it saves energy by switching off the door heaters that reduce condensation in humid weather. These heaters aren't needed in dry climates.

## REFRIGERATOR ASSESSMENT AND REPLACEMENT

Refrigerators that are more than 10 years old usually consume between 1000 and 2000 kilowatt-hours per year. New ENERGY STAR® rated refrigerators use less than 550 kilowatt-hours per year. Replacement should be considered on a case-by-case basis depending on energy consumption as determined below.

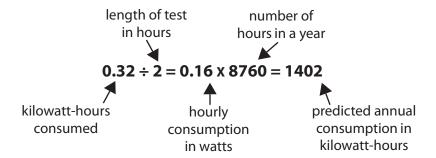
# MEASURING REFRIGERATOR ENERGY CONSUMPTION

Since at least two hours are needed to accurately measure refrigerator energy consumption, monitoring is usually performed during an energy audit visit. A recording watt-hour meter is used to measure consumption.

If the refrigerator is an automatic defrost model, an inaccurate reading could result if the unit goes into the electric defrost mode during the test period. This test protocol includes provisions to account for this defrost mode.

- 1. Determine if the refrigerator is equipped with automatic defrost. This is usually stated on the manufacturer's data plate or on the outside of the unit. If it is *not* so equipped (manual defrost), proceed to step 3.
- 2. If the unit is equipped with automatic defrost, locate the defrost timer. This small electrical box is usually located behind the front kick-plate, though you may need to move some wires and use a flashlight to see it. It may also be located on the rear of the unit or inside the main compartment behind the lighting panel. Open the defrost timer and locate the advance pinion. This shaft usually has a screwdriver slot to allow you to manually advance the timer. Turn the timer clockwise (you can break the timer if you turn counter-clockwise) until you hear a loud click. This turns the defrost heaters on. Turn it 10-20 degrees further until it clicks loudly again, turning the heaters off. You can now perform your measurement since the timer won't call for defrost heat again for several hours.
- 3. Connect the refrigerator to a recording watt-hour meter. Run the test for at least two hours. You don't need to stop at exactly two hours, and a longer measurement is O.K. During the test, avoid opening the refrigerator, or do so briefly.

4. At the end of the test, read the kilowatt/hours of consumption measured by the meter. Divide this number by the number of hours in the test. This gives you the number of kilowatts consumed each hour. Multiply this number times the total number of hours in a year (8760 hours per year). The product of this calculation is the annual kilowatt-hours expected to be consumed by the unit.



**Refrigerator consumption example:** In this example, a 2-hour measurement was performed. During this time, the appliance consumed 0.32 kilowatt-hours of electricity, or 0.16 watts for every hour. The annual total of 1402 kilowatt-hours is well beyond the 550 kilowatt-hours per year consumed by today's most efficient refrigerators.

The American Home Appliance Manufacturers (AHAM) also publishes a list of refrigerators by year manufactured, model, serial number, and approximate annual electricity consumption. Consulting this list is also a good way to estimate the cost effectiveness of refrigerator replacement.

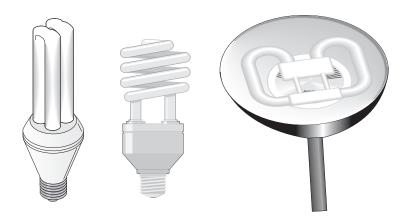
Refrigerators that are replaced should be taken to a facility, licensed to reclaim their refrigerant. No refrigerator that is taken out of service should be returned to service by sale, barter, or for free.

#### 2.8 LIGHTING MEASURES

Most homes have 6-to-12 lamps that burn for more than two hours per day. These should be considered for retrofit by more-

efficient compact fluorescent lamps (CFLs). This easy retrofit has as good an economic return as any weatherization measure.

Replace as many incandescents as your program allows. Explain the benefits to the client, and encourage them to purchase additional CFLs if possible. Point out that the long life of these lamps makes them economical despite their higher initial cost.

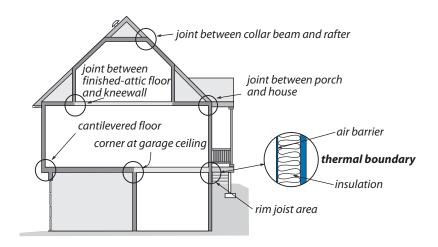


**Compact fluorescent lamps:** These advanced lamps use about one-third of the electricity of the incandescent lamps they usually replace, and they last about ten times as long.

# CHAPTER 3: AIR SEALING AND INSULATING

Air sealing and insulating improve the building's thermal boundary. This boundary should consist of an air barrier that is located immediately adjacent to the insulation. Perform air-leakage testing and evaluation before beginning air-sealing or insulation work. *See Chapter 4*.

Use visual inspection and/or pressure diagnostics to determine the cost-effectiveness of improving the thermal resistance of a building. Both air sealing and adding insulation use the same general approach—the most critical areas are retrofitted first and then less needy areas are retrofitted as time and budget permit.



**Thermal boundary flaws:** The thermal boundary contains the air barrier and insulation, which should be adjacent to one other. The insulation and the air barrier are often discontinuous at corners and transitions. These areas merit special attention.

## 3.1 REDUCING AIR LEAKAGE

Air leakage in homes accounts for 5% to 40% of annual heating and cooling costs. Air-leakage reduction is one of weatherization's most important functions, and often the most difficult.

Reducing air leakage accomplishes several tasks.

- Saves energy by protecting the thermal resistance of the shell insulation
- Increases comfort by reducing drafts and moderating the radiant temperature of interior surfaces
- Reduces moisture migration into building cavities

Air travels into and out of the building by three main pathways.

- Major air leaks, which are significant flaws in the home's air barrier
- Minor air leaks, which are often seams between building materials
- Through the building materials themselves (*See table 4-3 on page 122.*)

## WHEN NOT TO AIR SEAL

Air sealing reduces the exchange of fresh air in the home, and can alter the pressure balance within the home. Before air sealing, survey the home to identify both air-pollutants that may be concentrated by air sealing efforts, and combustion appliances that may be affected by changes in house pressure. See page 118.

Don't perform air-sealing when there are obvious threats to the occupants' health, the installers' health, or the building's durability. If any of the following circumstances are present, do not perform air sealing until they are corrected.

Fire hazards

- Measured carbon monoxide levels that exceed the suggested action level
- The building is already at or below its Building Airflow Standard, and no mechanical ventilation exists or is planned
- Combustion-zone depressurization that exceeds -4 pascals during a worst-case test
- Combustion appliances whose chimneys don't meet minimum standards
- Unvented space heaters that will be used after air-sealing work
- Moisture that has caused structural damage such as rot, mold, or mildew
- Infestations, vermin, or other sanitary issues

#### **SEALING MAJOR AIR LEAKS AND BYPASSES**

Major air sealing involves finding and sealing large openings that admit outdoor air into the conditioned space. Sealing major air leaks is one of the best energy-saving measures.

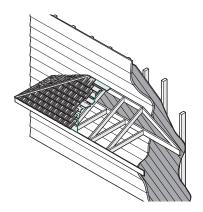
Major air sealing activities are generally completed prior to other shell measure activities, and should result in a significant drop in the blower door reading and/or changes in pressure diagnostics readings.

Bypasses are conduits for air travel within building cavities. Bypasses don't always allow outdoor air into the home, but may allow outdoor air to circulate around within the building cavities. They can be a significant energy loss, however, when they are adjacent to interior surfaces of the home that can conduct heat into or out of the home. Bypasses and major air leaks are often found in combination with one another, with some air leaking through the air barrier and some staying within the building cavities.

Bypasses that don't penetrate the air barrier won't have an impact on pressure diagnostic tests, but they should still be sealed to reduce conductive losses (through interior surfaces) and to limit the condensation that can take place on cold interior surfaces.

Major air leaks will often be found between the conditioned space and intermediate zones such as floor cavities, attics, crawl spaces, attached garages, and porch roofs. The time and effort you spend to seal major air leaks should depend on its size.

Major air leaks are not always easily accessible. When they are hard to reach, technicians sometimes blow densepacked cellulose insulation into surrounding cavities, hoping that the cellulose will resist airflow and plug cracks between building materials.



Porch air leakage: Porch roof cavities often allow substantial air leakage because of numerous joints, and because there may be no siding or sheathing installed in hidden areas.

## Air sealing tips

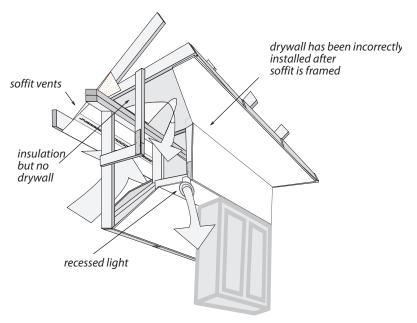
Air barriers must be able to resist severe wind pressures. It is always preferable to use strong air-barrier materials like plywood, drywall, or foamboard to seal major air leaks, particularly in regions with strong winds. These materials should be attached with mechanical and/or adhesive bonds.

Caulk should only be used for sealing very small cracks. Use liquid foam for cracks larger than 1/4". Don't leave any type of foam exposed to sunlight.

Seal all air leaks and bypasses prior to insulating except where cellulose is also being used for sealing.

*Joist cavities under knee walls in finished attic areas:* Connect knee wall with the plaster ceiling of the floor below by creating a rigid seal under the knee wall.

Kitchen or bathroom interior soffits: Seal the top of the soffit with fire-rated foil-faced foam board, plywood or drywall, fastened and sealed to ceiling joists and soffit framing.

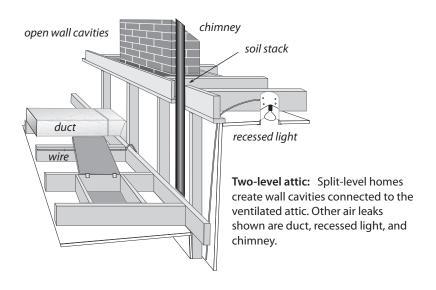


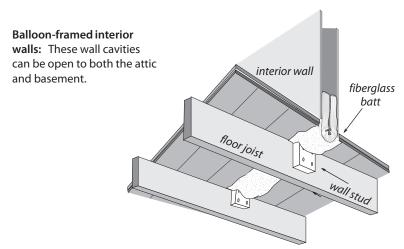
**Kitchen soffits:** These framing flaws are often open to both the wall cavity and ventilated attic. Any hole in the soffit creates a direct connection between the kitchen and attic.

Soil stacks, plumbing vents, open plumbing walls: Seal joints with expanding foam or caulk. If joint is too large, stuff with fiberglass insulation, and spray foam over the top to seal the surface of the plug.

Two-level attics in split-level houses: Seal the wall cavity with a rigid material fastened to studs and wall material.

Tops and bottoms of balloon-framed interior partition wall cavities, missing top plates: Seal with a fiberglass insulation plug, covered with a 2-part foam air seal. Seal with rigid barrier, such as  $^1/_4$ -inch plywood or 1-inch foam board sealed to surrounding materials with caulk or liquid foam.

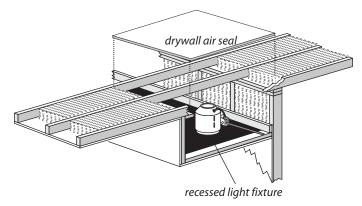




Masonry chimneys: Seal chimney and fireplace bypasses with sheet metal (minimum 28 gauge thickness). Seal to chimney or

flue and ceiling structure with a high temperature sealant or chimney cement.

Housings of exhaust fans and recessed lights: Caulk joints where housing comes in contact with the ceiling with high-temperature silicone sealant.



**Recessed light fixtures:** These are major leakage sites, but these fixtures must remain ventilated to cool their incandescent bulbs. Plug the top of the soffit in this case with drywall.

Duct boots and registers: If ducts are located in attic, crawl space, attached garage, or in the floor cavity above garage, caulk or foam the joint between the boot and the ceiling, wall, or floor.

Duct chases: If chase opening is large, seal with a rigid barrier such as fire-rated foam board, plywood or drywall, and seal the new barrier to ducts with caulk or foam. Smaller cracks between the barrier and surrounding materials may be foamed or caulked.

*Bathtubs and shower stalls:* Seal holes and cracks from underneath with expanding foam. Seal large openings with rigid materials caulked or foamed at edges.

Attic hatches and stairwell drops: Weatherstrip around doors and hatches. Caulk around frame perimeter.

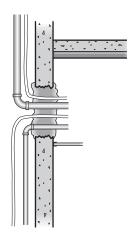
Wiring and conduit penetrations:

Seal penetration with caulk or foam.

Other openings in the air barrier: Seal with rigid material, caulk, spray foam, or expanding foam depending upon size and nature of opening.

Pocket door cavities: When located on the second floor, cap the top of the entire wall cavity in the attic with rigid

Large holes: Tradesmen often knock large holes in concrete walls without patching them. These can create large air leaks.



board, caulked and stapled. Where wall cavities containing the retracted pocket door halves connect with exterior framed walls, stuff narrow strips of unfaced fiberglass batts into the door opening with a broom handle far enough to allow for complete opening of the door.

## MINOR AIR SEALING

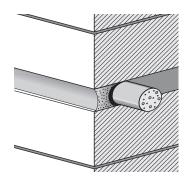
Minor air sealing includes sealing small openings with such materials as caulk, weather stripping, or sash locks. These measures tend to please the home's occupants by reducing perceived drafts, slowing the entry of dirt, or making the interior paint look better. But they rarely result in significant blower door reductions or changes in pressure diagnostic readings.

Cracks in exterior window and door frames: Sealing serves to keep bulk water out. If the crack is deeper than <sup>5</sup>/<sub>16</sub>-inch, it should be backed with a material such as backer rod and then sealed with caulk. Any existing loose or brittle material should be removed before the crack is recaulked.

*Joints in foundation sill plate*: They can be sealed with caulk or foam.

*Holes and cracks in masonry surfaces:* Best sealed with a cement-patching compound or mortar mix.

Interior joints: These can be caulked if blower door testing indicates substantial leakage. These joints include where baseboard, crown molding and/or casing meet the wall/ceiling/floor surfaces. Gaps around surface-mounted or recessed light fixtures and ventilation fans can be caulked if needed.



**Backer rod:** Use it to support caulk when sealing large uniform gaps. Use liquid foam for sealing irregular gaps.

# 3.2 Installing insulation

Insulation reduces heat transmission by slowing conduction, convection, and radiation through the building shell. Insulation combined with an air barrier forms the thermal boundary.

Installing insulation is one of the most effective energy-saving measures. Follow these general guidelines.

- ✔ Protect insulation from air movement with an effective air barrier. Make sure that the air barrier and insulation will be aligned using procedures outlined on page 121.
- ✔ Protect insulation from moisture by repairing roof and siding leaks, and by controlling vapor sources within the home.
- ✓ Install insulation blankets so they cover the entire area without voids or edge gaps.
- ✓ Install loose-fill insulation at sufficient density to resist settling. Perform a bag count to achieve the density specified on the label of each bag.
- ✓ Fill wall cavities with densepack insulation. Perform a bag count to achieve 3.5 to 4.5 pounds per cubic foot. Fill cavities completely.
- ✓ Observe lead-safe weatherization practices with all tasks that may disturb interior paint. *See page 23*.

## **Insulation safety procedures**

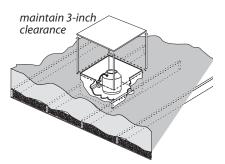
Comply with the following fire and electrical safety procedures before insulating.

Inspect wiring, fuses, and circuit breakers to ensure that wiring isn't overloaded. Install Stype fuses where appro-



S-type fuse: An Stype fuse prohibits residents from oversizing the fuse and overloading an electrical circuit. priate to prevent circuit overloading. Maximum ampacity for 14-gauge wire is 15 amps and for 12-gauge wire is 20 amps. Do not cover knob-and-tube wiring with insulation.

- ✔ Protect heat-producing fixtures such as recessed lights and exhaust fans with lights or heaters. Install an airtight box if air leakage is suspected, or a metal collar if they are airtight.
- Confirm that all wire splices are enclosed in electrical junction boxes. If you plan to cover a junction box with insulation, mark its location with a sign or flag.



Recessed light fixtures: Covering recessed light fixtures with fire-resistant drywall or sheet-metal enclosures reduces air leakage and allows installers to safely insulate around the box.

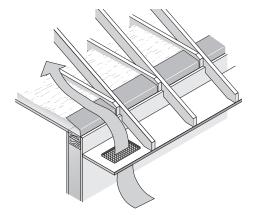
- ✓ Install insulation shields around unlined masonry chimneys, B-vent chimneys, and manufactured chimneys. Seal any bypasses around chimneys with metal and high-temperature caulk.
- ✓ Install insulation shields around all-fuel wood-stove chimneys with 6" of space between the chimney and insulation.
- ✓ If shields are used as a barrier around heating producing devices or masonry chimneys, fasten them securely to the ceiling joist so they maintain 3 inches of clearance and don't collapse. Don't allow metal shields to contact wiring. Cover the tops of shields while installing insulation, and uncover and clean them out afterwards.

✓ Wear an approved respirator or dust mask while blowing insulation or installing batts. See page 31.

## **ATTIC INSULATION**

Perform these preparatory steps before installing attic insulation.

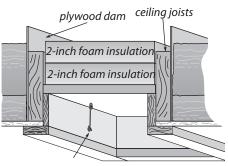
- ✔ Before insulating the attic, seal air leaks and bypasses as described previously. Air leakage and convection can significantly degrade the thermal resistance of attic insulation. If attic air leaks are not properly sealed, increasing attic ventilation may increase the home's airleakage rate.
- Repair roof leaks and other attic-related moisture problems before insulating attic. If attic-related moisture problems can't be repaired, don't insulate the attic.
- ✔ Vent all kitchen and bath fans outdoors through roof or soffit fittings. Use PVC or rigid metal piping whenever possible, and insulate the pipe to prevent condensation. Avoid using flexible plastic ducting. Check all fans for proper backdraft



**Soffit chute or dam:** Allows installation of maximum amount of insulation in this cold area. Also prevents wind washing and airway blockage by blown insulation.

damper operation. Repair or replace the damper or the entire fan assembly if the damper doesn't operate freely.

- ✓ Install chutes, dams, tubes, or other blocking materials to prevent blown insulation from plugging air channels between soffit vents and the attic. These shields maximize the amount of insulation that may be installed over top plates without clogging ventilation paths. They also help prevent the wind-washing of insulation caused by cold air entering soffit vents.
- ✓ Install an attic access hatch if none is present, preferably at the exterior of the home. The attic hatch should be at least 22 inches on each side if possible.
- ✓ Build an insulation dam around the attic access hatch. Build the dam with rigid materials like plywood or oriented-strand board so that it will support the weight of a person entering or leaving the attic. Insulate the hatch to an R-value that matches the attic insulation.



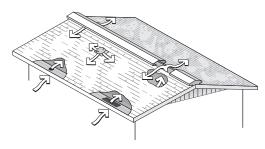
latch holds hatch tight to stops

Insulated attic hatch: Foam insulation prevents this area from being a thermal weakness. Building a dam prevents loose-fill insulation from falling down the hatchway.

## **ATTIC VENTILATION**

Attic ventilation is intended to remove moisture from the attic during the heating season and/or to remove solar heat from the attic during the cooling season. It is often ineffective, however, and adding attic ventilation during weatherization is seldom necessary.

Many building codes require a minimum ratio of one square foot of net free area to 150 square feet of attic area if a vapor barrier isn't present. With a vapor barrier, only one square foot per 300 square feet of attic area is required.



Low and high attic ventilation: A moderate amount of ventilation creates air exchange with outdoors to remove moisture and to keep the attic from overheating in summer.

It doesn't often work to add attic ventilation to

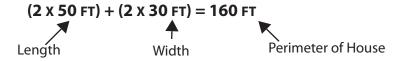
cure a moisture problem caused by airborne moisture migrating up from the living space. Preventing moisture from entering the attic in the first place is the best way to keep attic insulation dry. Ceilings should be thoroughly air-sealed to prevent moist indoor air from leaking through the ceiling.

Excess attic ventilation can actually increase ceiling air leakage by increasing the stack effect. In some climates, nighttime cooling of the roof deck can also cause water vapor that enters on ventilation air to condense on attic surfaces.

## **CALCULATING LOOSE-FILL INSULATION COVERAGE**

Loose-fill attic insulation should be installed to a uniform depth to attain proper coverage (bags per square foot) so it attains the desired R-value at the settled thickness. Attic insulation always settles: cellulose usually settles 10% to 20% and fiberglass settles 3% to 10%. Loose-fill wall insulation should be installed tightly enough that it cannot settle at all.

#### **CALCULATING WALL COVERAGE**



STEP 1: Calculate perimeter of house

Calculate the perimeter of the house. If the house is a simple rectangle or near a simple rectangle, use the formula above. If the house has numerous unequal sides, simply add the lengths together to find the perimeter.



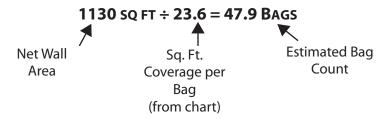
STEP 2: Calculate total wall area

After calculating the perimeter of the house, multiply it times the wall height. This will give you the total wall area.



STEP 3: Calculate Net Wall Area

Calculate the sum of the areas of windows and doors. Subtract them from the total wall area to get net wall area.



STEP 4: Calculate Bag Count

Divide net wall area by coverage per bag from the chart on the bag (number circled in sample chart) to get your estimated bag count.

#### **CALCULATING ATTIC COVERAGE**



STEP 1: Calculate area of attic

Multiple length times width of the attic to get the area of attic.



STEP 2: Calculate Bag Count\

Divide area of attic by coverage per bag from the chart on the bag (number double circled in chart) to get your Estimated Bag Count.

Table 3-1: Insulation blowing coverage chart

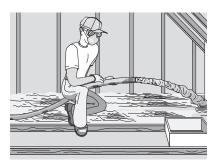
Example bag table
To obtain a minimum density of 1.6 pounds/cubic foot

	R VALUE AT 78° MEAN TEMP.	MINIMUM THICKNESS	MAXIMUM NET COVERAGE		MAXIMUM GROSS COVERAGE BASED ON 2" x 6" FRAMING		MINIMUM WEIGHTS PER SQ. FT.	
	TO OBTAIN THIS R-VALUE	INSULATION SHOULD NOT BE LESS THAN THIS THICK	MAXIMUM SQ. FT. COVERAGE PER BAG	BAGS PER 1000 SQ. FT	MAXIMUM SQ. FT. COVERAGE PER BAG	BAGS PER 1000 SQ. FT.	THE WEIGHT PER SQ. FT. OF INSTALLED INSULATION (IN LBS.) SHOULD NOT BE LESS THAN	
A T T I C	R-40	10.95	12.9	77.5	13.5	74.2	1.46	
	R-38	10.41	13.6	73.5	14.2	70.3	1.38	
	R-32	8.76	16.1	62.0	17.1	58.7	1.16	
	R-30	8.21	17.2	58.0	18.2	54.8	1.09	
	R-27	7.40	18.3	52.2	19.4	51.4	.98	
	R-24	6.57	21.5	46.5	23.2	43.0	.87	
	R-23	6.30	22.4	44.5	24.2	41.2	.84	
	R-19	5.20	27.2	36.7	(30.0)	33.4	.69	
	R-13	3.56	40.2	24.9	46.0	21.7	.47	
	R-11	3.01	47.1	21.2	56.0	17.8	.40	
SIDEWALLS					2X4 STUDS ON 16" O.C.			
R-13		3.5			23.6	42.40	.79	
R-19		5.5			15.0	66.60		

#### **BLOWING ATTIC INSULATION**

Install attic insulation to a cost effective R-value, depending upon existing insulation level and climatic region.

Blown insulation is preferred to batt insulation because blown insulation forms a seamless blanket. Blowing attic insulation at the highest achievable insulation density helps minimize settling and slows convection currents from moving within the insulation.



**Blown-in attic insulation:** Blown insulation is more continuous than batts and produces better coverage. Insulation should be blown at a high density to reduce settling.

Follow these standards when installing loose-fill attic insulation.

- Perform a bag count to determine how much insulation is needed to achieve the density specified on the bag's label.
- Maintain a high density by moving as much insulation as possible through the hose with the available air pressure. The more the insulation is packed together in the blowing hose, the greater its density will be.
- ✓ Fill the edges of the attic first, near the eaves or gable end, and move toward the center. Don't leave thin places over the wall plates.
- ✓ Install insulation at an even depth. Go back and use a stick to level the insulation if needed.
- ✓ Post an Insulation Certificate near the attic entrance.

#### INSTALLING ATTIC BATT INSULATION

Follow these standards when installing fiberglass batts in the attic.

- ✓ Install unfaced fiberglass insulation whenever possible. Faced insulation doesn't tend to lay as flat as un-faced batts, and the facing is not effective in slowing vapor movement anyway.
- ✓ If you must install faced batts, install it with the facing toward the heated space. Never install faced insulation over existing insulation.
- Cut batts carefully to ensure a tight fit against the ceiling joists and other framing.

#### **FINISHED KNEE WALL ATTICS**

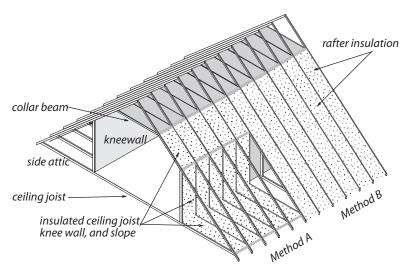
Finished attics require special care when installing insulation. They often include five separate sections that require different sealing and insulating methods.

- Exterior walls of finished attic
- Collar-beam attic, above finished attic
- Sloped roof, where wall/roof finish is installed directly to roof rafters
- Knee walls, between finished attic and unconditioned attic space
- Outer ceiling joists, between knee wall and top plate of exterior wall

Follow these specifications when insulating finished attics.

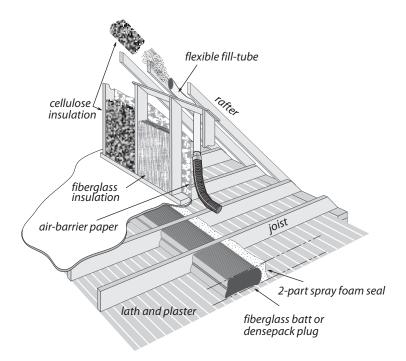
✓ Seal large air leaks when they are adjacent to the conditioned space. Some small cavities can be sealed with densepack insulation.

✓ Inspect the structure to confirm that it has the strength to support the weight of the insulation.



**Finished attic:** This illustration depicts two approaches to insulating a finished attic. Either A) insulate the kneewall and side attic floor, or B) insulate the rafters.

- ✓ Create an airtight and structurally strong seal in the joist space under the knee wall. This can be done by either blowing densepack cellulose into the joist cavities, by inserting 2-inch-thick foam sheets and foaming their perimeters with one-part foam, or by inserting a fiberglass batt into the cavity and foaming its face with two-part spray foam.
- ✓ Insulate sloped roof with densepack cellulose.

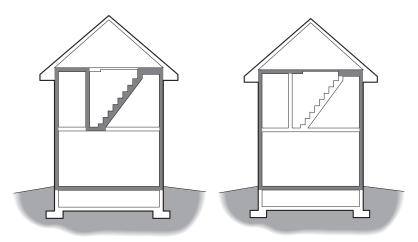


**Finished attic best practices:** Air sealing and insulation combine to dramatically reduce heat transmission and air leakage in homes with finished attics.

- ✓ Insulate knee walls with densepack cellulose or fiberglass batts. Prepare the knee wall for blowing by nailing house wrap to the knee wall with large-headed nails or stapling the house wrap through a strip of cardboard or thin wood. Or insulate the knee wall with high-density batts and apply house wrap to the attic side of the wall to prevent convection and air leakage.
- ✓ When the knee wall area is used for storage, cover insulation with a vapor-permeable material such as house wrap to prevent exposure to insulation fibers.
- ✓ Insulate knee wall access hatches and collar-beam access hatch with 3 or more inches of rigid-foam insulation, or a well-secured fiberglass batt. Weatherstrip the hatch and provide a positive closure.

## **WALK-UP STAIRWAYS AND DOORS**

Think carefully about how to establish a continuous insulation and air barrier around or over the top of an attic stairway. If the attic is accessed by a stairwell and standard vertical door, you can blow dense pack cellulose insulation into walls of the stairwell. Install a threshold or door sweep, and weatherstrip the door. Also blow packed cellulose insulation into the cavity beneath the stair treads and risers.



**Insulating and sealing attic stair** walls, doors, and stairs: Insulating and air sealing these is one way of establishing the thermal boundary.

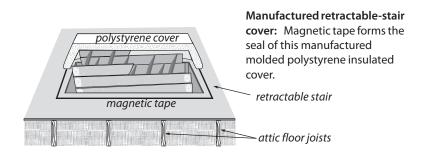
**Insulating and weatherstripping the attic hatch:** Air sealing around the hatch is an alternative way of establishing the thermal boundary.

You can also establish the thermal boundary at the ceiling level, but this requires a horizontal hatch at the top of the stairs.

When planning to insulate stairwells, investigate barriers such as fire blocking that might prevent insulation from filling cavities you want to fill, and consider what passageways may lead to other areas you don't want to fill such as closets. Balloon-framed walls and deep stair cavities complicate this measure.

## Insulating & sealing retractable attic stairways

Retractable attic stairways are sometimes installed above the access hatch. Building an insulated box or buying a manufactured stair-and-hatchway cover are good solutions to insulating and sealing this weak point in the thermal boundary.



#### **AIR-SEALING MULTI-FAMILY BUILDINGS**

Large multi-family buildings present some unique air sealing issues to weatherization crews. Air moves in large older buildings through passages formed by construction features such as furring strips on exterior walls, duct chases, chimneys, and plumbing stacks.

Experience has shown that large air leaks and bypasses must be sealed from the attic, not from inside the house, because there are just too many openings to seal once air enters walls, floors, and chases.

Follow these guidelines when air-sealing older multi-family buildings.

- Don't rely on blower door testing. You may get false readings from air that enters through the other dwelling units.
- ✔ Focus on sealing large air leaks and bypasses that are found by visual inspection. Enter the attic space and

- seal openings with rigid barriers, foam sealant, and caulk.
- Perform moisture control measures to protect insulation. Don't install insulation if both bulk water and airborne moisture can't be controlled.
- ✓ Install loose-fill insulation in attics, and densepack insulation in walls and "mystery cavities."

Attic ventilation is often unnecessary and ineffective in large multi-family buildings, and can increase heat loss and condensation especially if large air leaks are left unsealed.

#### WALL INSULATION

If you find the existing walls uninsulated or partially insulated, add insulation to provide complete coverage for all the home's exterior walls.

Properly installed cellulose wall insulation reduces air leakage through walls and other closed building cavities because the fibers are driven into the cracks by the blowing machine.

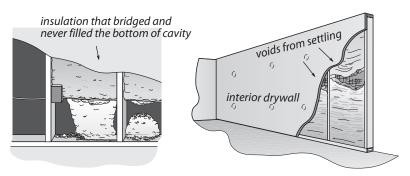
Install wall insulation with a uniform coverage and density. Wall cavities encourage airflow like chimneys. Convection currents or air leakage can significantly reduce wall insulation's thermal performance if spaces remain for air to flow.

Two methods for installing sidewall insulation are commonly used: tube-fill method (one large hole) or the two-hole method. The tube-fill method is preferred because it ensures that the wall achieves an adequate coverage and density of insulation.

## Inspecting and repairing walls

✓ Inspect walls for evidence of moisture damage. If condition of the siding, sheathing, or interior wall finish indicates an existing moisture problem, no sidewall insulation should be installed until the moisture problem has been identified and corrected.

- ✓ Seal gaps in external window trim and other areas that may admit rain water into the wall.
- ✓ Inspect indoor surfaces of exterior walls to assure that they are strong enough to withstand the force of insulation blowing. Add screws or other reinforcement to weak walls if feasible.
- ✓ Inspect for interior openings from which insulation may escape such as balloon framing openings in the attic or crawl space, pocket doors, un-backed cabinets, interior soffits, and closets. Seal openings as necessary to prevent insulation from escaping.
- ✓ Confirm that exterior wall cavities aren't used as return ducts. Avoid these cavities, or re-route the ducting.
- ✓ Ensure that electrical circuits contained within walls aren't overloaded. Maximum ampacity for 14-gauge copper wire is 15 amps and for 12-gauge copper wire is 20 amps. Install S-type fuses where appropriate to prevent circuit overloading. Don't insulate cavities containing knob-and-tube insulation. See page 26.



**Problems with low density insulation:** Blowing insulation through one or two small holes usually creates voids inside the wall cavity. This is because insulation won't reliably blow at an adequate density more than about one foot from the nozzle.

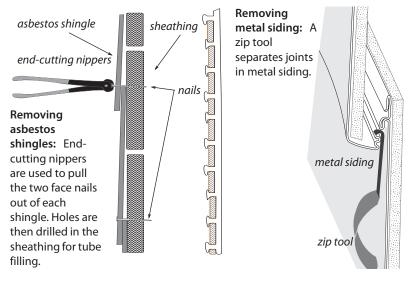
Use tube-filling methods whenever possible, using a 1 1/2" hose inserted through a 2" or larger hole. If you must use small holes with no fill tube, drill at least 3 holes.

## Removing siding and drilling sheathing

Avoid drilling through siding. Where possible, carefully remove siding and drill through sheathing. This avoids the potential lead-paint hazard of drilling the siding. It also makes it easier to insert flexible fill tubes since the holes pass through one less layer of material.

If the siding cannot be removed, consider drilling the walls from inside the home. Obtain the owner's permission before doing so, and practice lead-safe weatherization procedures. *See page 23*.

- ✓ If your program policy allows, asbestos shingles may be carefully removed by pulling the nails holding them to the sheathing or else nipping off the nailheads. Dampening the asbestos tiles keeps dust down. Refer to your company standards for proper protective equipment when working with asbestos materials.
- ✓ Metal or vinyl siding may be removed with a zip tool.
- Homes with brick veneer or blind-nailed asbestos siding may be insulated from the inside. Holes drilled for insulation must be returned to an appearance as close to original as possible, or so they are satisfactory to the customer.



## **Dense-packing wall insulation**

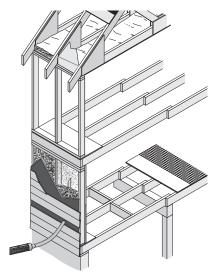
Dense-pack wall insulation is best installed using a blower equipped with separate controls for air and material feed.

Mark the fill tube in one-foot intervals to help the installer verify when the tube has reached the top of the wall cavity.

To prevent settling, cellulose insulation must be blown at 3.5-4.5 pounds per cubic foot density. This minimum density translates into 1.2 pounds per square foot in a 2-by-4 wall cavity on 16-inch centers, and 1.8 pounds per square foot in a 2-by-6 wall cavity on 16-inch centers. Blowing cellulose insulation this densely typically requires using a fill tube.

Insulate walls by this procedure.

1. Drill 2-to-3-inch diameter holes to access stud cavity.



Tube-filling walls: This method can be accomplished from inside or outside the home. It is the preferred wall insulation method because it is a reliable way to achieve a uniform coverage and density.

- 2. Probe all wall cavities through holes, as you drill them, to identify fire blocking, diagonal bracing, and other obstacles. After probing, drill whatever additional holes are necessary to ensure complete coverage.
- 3. Start with several full-height, unobstructed wall cavities so you can measure the insulation density and calibrate the blower. An 8-foot cavity (2-by-4 on 16-inch centers) should consume a minimum of 10 pounds of cellulose.
- 4. Insert the hose all the way to the top of the cavity. Start the machine, and back the hose out slowly as the cavity

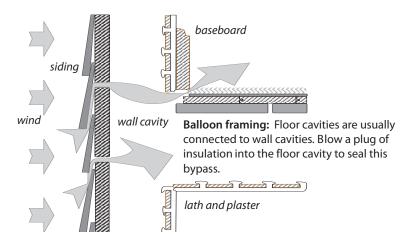
fills. Work the hose back and forth in the cavity to pack the insulation tighter.

- 5. Shut off the flow of material when about 6" from the end.
- 6. Seal and plug the holes, and replace the siding.



**Insulation hoses, fittings, and the fill tube:** Smooth, gradual transitions are important to the free flow of insulation.

When insulating balloon-framed walls, try to blow an insulation plug into each floor cavity to insulate the perimeter between the two floors. This also seals the floor cavity so it does not become a conduit for air migration. If the process is requiring too much insulation, try placing a plastic bag over the end of the fill tube and blowing the insulation into the plastic bag. The bag will limit the amount of insulation it takes to plug this area.



#### **Two-hole method**

The two-hole method is often used when the insulator doesn't want to remove siding. The two-hole method is the least preferable wall-insulation method because it often results in voids and sub-standard density. It is sometimes used effectively in con-

junction with tube-filling to fill small cavities around doors or windows.

If you do employ this method, use a powerful blowing machine, preferably one with a gasoline engine.

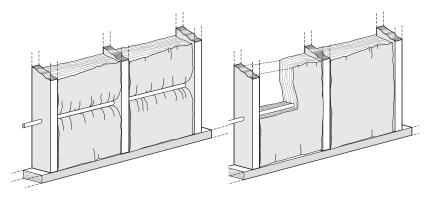
- ✓ Drill two holes into each stud cavity large enough to admit a directional nozzle. The top hole should be located no more than 20 inches below the top plate. The bottom hole should be no more than 24 inches above the bottom plate.
- ✔ Probe wall cavities to determine location of obstacles and nature of cavities around window and door areas.
- ✓ All wall cavities around windows and doors should be filled with insulation.
- ✓ Seal all holes with wood or plastic plugs.

#### **Open-cavity wall insulation**

Fiberglass batts are the most common open-cavity wall insulation. They achieve their rated R-value only when installed carefully. If there are gaps between the cavity and batt at the top and bottom, the R-value can be reduced by as much as 30 percent. The batt should fill the entire cavity without spaces in corners or edges.

- ✓ Use unfaced friction-fit batt insulation where possible. Fluff to fill entire wall cavity.
- ✓ Choose R-13 batts rather than R-11.
- ✓ Staple faced insulation to outside face of studs on the warm side of the cavity. Do not staple on the side of the studs.
- Cut batt insulation to the exact length of the cavity. A too-short batt creates air spaces above and beneath the batt, allowing convection. A too-long batt will bunch up, creating air pockets.

- ✓ Split batt around wiring, rather than letting the wiring bunch the batt to one side of the cavity.
- ✓ Insulate behind and around obstacles with scrap pieces of batt before installing batt.
- ✓ Fiberglass insulation exposed to the interior living space must be covered with minimum half-inch drywall or other material that has an ASTM flame spread rating of 25 or less. Fiberglass insulation with a fire-resistant foil-scrim-kraft (FSK) facing does not require an additional fire barrier.



Fiberglass batts, compressed by a cable: This reduces the wall's R-value by creating a void between the insulation and interior wallboard.

**Batt, split around a cable:** The batt attains its rated R-value.

## FLOOR AND FOUNDATION INSULATION

Floor and foundation insulation are undertaken in conjunction with air sealing to complete the thermal boundary at the base of the building.

In homes with heated and occupied basements, the best choice is to insulate and air-seal the basement walls, and so include the basement within the thermal boundary. The choice is less straightforward in homes with unused basements or crawl spaces where a choice must be made between insulating the

floor or the foundation walls. This decision should be made according to cost-effectiveness.

## **Establishing a thermal boundary**

To establish an effective thermal boundary, the insulation and air barrier should be adjacent to each other. Establishing an effective air barrier—comparable to the air barriers in the above-grade walls and ceiling—may be difficult. Furthermore, foundation or floor insulation may or may not be cost-effective or practical, considering the home's weatherization budget and potential moisture problems.

Most building experts prefer to insulate and air-seal the foundation walls and not the floor because this strategy encloses the furnace, ducts, pipes and other features within an insulated and air-sealed space. This involves plugging crawl-space vents if appropriate.

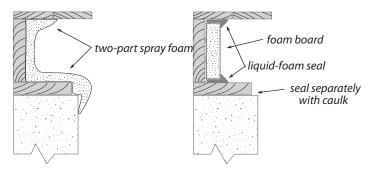
Floor insulation is generally preferred where there are crawlspace moisture problems or where rubble masonry makes insulating and air-sealing the foundation wall difficult.

## Rim insulation and air sealing

The joist spaces at the perimeter of the floor are a major weak point in the air barrier and insulation. Insulating and air sealing both the rim joist and longitudinal box joist are appropriate either as individual procedures or as part of floor or foundation insulation.

Air-seal stud cavities in balloon-framed homes as a part of insulating the rim joist. Air-seal other penetrations through the rim before insulating. Two-part spray foam is the most versatile air-sealing and insulation system for the rim joist because spray foam air-seals and insulates in one step. Polystyrene or polyure-thane rigid board insulation is also good for insulating and air-sealing the rim joist area. Longitudinal box joist cavities, enclosed by a floor joist, may be sealed and blown with wall insulation unless moisture is present.

Fiberglass-batt insulation should not be used because air can circulate around the fiberglass causing condensation and encouraging mold on the cold rim joist. If foam-board is used to insulate the rim, liquid foam sealant should be used to seal around the edges.



**Foam-insulated rim joists:** Installing foam insulation is the best way to insulate and air-seal the rim joist.

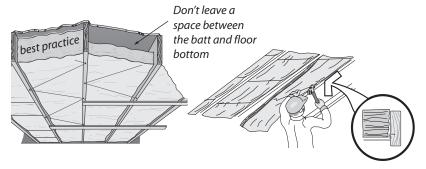
#### **Floor insulation**

All appropriate measures should be taken to establish an effective air barrier at the floor, prior to insulating the floor, to prevent air from passing through or around floor insulation.

The best way to insulate a floor cavity is to completely fill the joist cavity with unfaced fiberglass batt insulation. Partially filling the cavity with a fiberglass batt is less satisfactory because air movement above the batts reduces their effectiveness.

- ✓ If the walls are balloon-framed, air-seal the bottoms of the stud cavities prior to installing floor insulation to contain wall insulation.
- ✓ Install R-19 insulation between floor joists.
- ✓ Fit floor insulation tightly against the subfloor and the rim joist to reduce air convection.

✓ Install insulation without voids, edge gaps, or end gaps. Fit insulation closely around cross bracing and other obstructions.



**Floor insulating with batts:** Use unfaced fiberglass batts, installed flush to the floor bottom, to insulate floors. The batt should fill the whole cavity if it is supported by lath or plastic twine underneath. For batts that don't fill the whole cavity, use wire insulation supports.

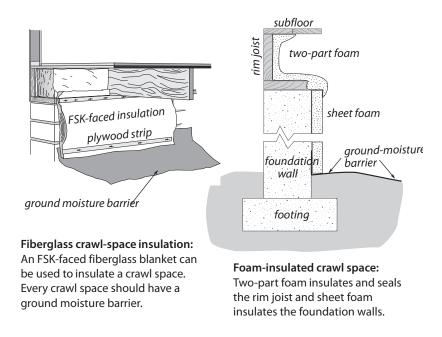
- Securely fasten batt insulation to framing with insulation hangers, plastic mesh, or other supporting material.
- ✓ Insulate water lines if they protrude below the insulation.
- ✓ Seal and insulate ducts remaining in the crawl space or unoccupied basement.
- ✓ Install a ground moisture barrier that runs up the foundation walls in crawl spaces. Secure the ground moisture barrier to the foundation wall with urethane sealant and/or mechanical fasteners.

## **FOUNDATION INSULATION**

Foundation insulation is usually installed the inside of the foundation wall during retrofits. Exterior insulation is common in new construction because it is more effective at slowing ground water migration through the foundation.

Extruded or expanded polystyrene insulations are the most appropriate insulation products for flat concrete or concrete-block walls, because they are good air barriers with excellent moisture resistance. For rubble masonry walls, use two-part spray foam. Spray foam is preferred whenever there is much moisture present.

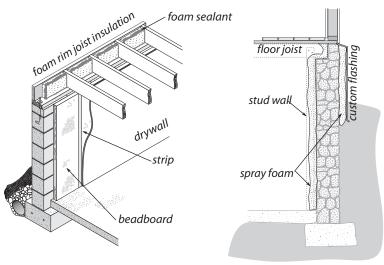
- Attach insulation firmly to the entire inside wall surface with appropriate fasteners and/or adhesive. Install insulation with no significant voids or edge gaps. Fiberglass insulation can be cut to fit the rim joist area.
- Cover basement foundation insulation with a material that has an ASTM flame spread rating of 25 or less, such as half-inch drywall. FSK fiberglass needs no additional barrier.



• FSK (foil scrim kraft) fiberglass insulation should be clamped to the sill plate by a wooden strip, which is nailed, stapled, or screwed into the sill. The bottom of this batt insulation should be air-sealed to the wall with

a strip of wood nailed into the foundation or by sealing the FSK facing to the wall with caulk, or by any other effective method. Stop the insulation short of the sill plate in areas where termites are common because it can provide a hidden pathway for their entrance into the building.

- If the heating system is located in crawl space, take precautions to assure that adequate outside combustion air is available.
- Outside access hatches should be securely attached to foundation wall. If the foundation walls are insulated, any crawl-space access hatch into a conditioned basement should be insulated.



**2-inch foam board with plywood strips:** The built-in strips facilitate fastening the foam to the wall and fastening drywall to the foam.

2-part foam sprayed on rubble masonry: Rubble masonry walls can be insulated on the interior or exterior with sprayed plastic foam. On the interior, the foam must be covered by drywall.

#### **Crawl space ventilation**

Crawl-space ventilation is generally not effective at controlling moisture migration, and it defeats the thermal barrier if foundation insulation is installed. Rely instead on these other source control measures.

- ✓ Extend any ducts from exhaust fans or clothes dryers to the outside. Use rigid piping whenever possible since flex duct tends to restrict airflow. If you must use short runs of flex duct, use only aluminum ducting and fasten it securely to avoid sags.
- Slope the ground outside the home away from the foundation.
- ✓ Install gutters and downspouts in very wet locations.
- ✓ Install a ground moisture barrier.

If you have effectively reduced moisture sources, seal the foundation vents if local codes allow. If crawl space ventilation is absolutely required by local codes, install one square foot of net free ventilation area for every 1500 square feet of crawl-space floor area. A minimum of two vents should be installed on opposite sides of the crawl space.

#### **Ground moisture barriers**

Air, moisture, and pollutants can move through soil and into crawl spaces and dirt-floor basements. Even soil that seems dry at the surface can release a lot of moisture into the home.

Cover the ground in these areas with an airtight barrier to control the movement of moisture and soil gases.

- ✓ Cover the ground completely with a ground moisture barrier such as black six-mil plastic or cross-laminated polyethylene.
- ✓ Run the barrier up the foundation wall several inches, or attach it to the mud sill if termites aren't a problem in your area.

✓ Seal the edges and seams with urethane adhesive to create an airtight seal.

## 3.3 WINDOWS AND DOORS

Windows and doors were once thought to be a major air-leakage problem. However, the widespread use of blower doors has shown that windows and doors don't tend to harbor large air leaks. Though conductive and convective losses through windows and doors are often quite high, these aren't affected much by most simple weatherization improvements.

If windows and doors are in poor condition, their repair is often essential for a building's survival even if it's not an energy-saving measure. Repairs that go beyond the cost-effective standards of the Weatherization Assistance Program should be limited to funds that are dedicated to repair work. All tasks relating to window and door repair should be accomplished using lead-safe weatherization methods.

#### WINDOW SHADING

Much of the solar energy that strikes a home's windows will pass through the glass and enter the living space. This solar heat accounts for up to 40% of summer overheating in many homes. It works far better to block solar heat before it enters the home than to cool the home after it overheats.

Window shading increases comfort and reduces the cost of cooling, and is one of the most cost-effective weatherization measures in hot climates. Not all windows cause overheating, so you should direct your efforts towards windows where the most heat enters.

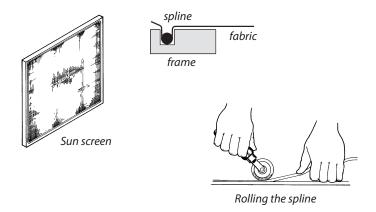
- Windows with no shade from landscaping or roof overhangs
- Windows that face east or west, followed by windows on the south side

Large windows

#### **Exterior window treatments**

Sun screens, made of mesh fabric that is stretched over an aluminum frame, are one of the most effective window-shading options. They absorb or reflect a large portion of the solar energy that strikes them, while allowing a slightly diminished but acceptable view out of the window.

Sun screens are installed on the outside of the window, and work well on fixed, double-hung, or sliding windows. They aren't suitable for jalousie windows. For casement and awning windows, the sun screen should be mounted on the movable window sash rather than on the window frame.



**Sun screens:** Installed on the window's exterior, sun screens absorb solar heat before it enters the home. This strategy is superior to interior window treatments, which reflect heat back after it has entered.

Sun screens are easily constructed in the shop or on the job.

- ✓ Cut the frames to size using a metal cutting saw.
- ✓ Fasten the frames together through reinforced corner pieces.

- Cut the fabric a few inches large in length and width, and stretch it into the frame using continuous soft plastic splines that fit into the frame.
- ✓ Cut the excess fabric from around the edges.

Install sun screens on the exterior of the window frame, trim, or sash. Drill pilot holes for screws that pass through the aluminum frame, or use clips that are screwed to the window frame outside the sun screen. Use aluminum fasteners on aluminum frames to avoid corrosion.

Other exterior window shades such as awnings, shutters, or rolling shades can provide good window shade, but are generally too expensive for weatherization programs.

#### Interior window treatments

Interior shades or curtains are not as effective as exterior shades because they reflect solar energy back after it enters the home. Much of this heat is absorbed by the shade and remains in the home.

Opaque or room-darkening roller shades with bright white or metallic surfaces can block some solar heat. The reflective surface should face outdoors. The interior surface can be any color.

Venetian blinds, mini-blinds, or cellular pleated shades are more expensive and somewhat less effective than roller shades, although they may have better acceptance among occupants. Traditional fabric curtains are the least effective solar shade.

Avoid translucent or light-admitting shades because they allow more heat to enter the home. Purchase window shades in the standard sizes that fit most windows since custom-sized shades are considerably more expensive.

Good management of window shades improves their effectiveness. Discuss these principles with the clients.

Close window shades in the morning before the home begins to heat up. Close the windows.

- Open shades in the evening to help cool the home. Open the windows.
- ✓ Open shades all day during winter to allow solar heat to enter the home.

Interior reflective window films, like those used on automobiles, provide shading while maintaining a view. They must be quite dark, however, to provide much cooling benefit, and they don't allow solar energy to enter the home in winter. Do not install reflective films on double-pane windows as they can cause overheating of the insulated glass unit that damages the edge seal.

# Landscaping for shade

Trees and bushes can provide shade for windows, walls, and roofs. They also cool the air around the home with shade and moisture evaporating from their leaves. Well-planned landscaping can reduce an un-shaded home's air-conditioning costs by up to 50% while adding value to the home and neighborhood.

The best plan for cool landscaping includes tall deciduous trees on the south side of the home to block high mid-day sun. Shorter trees or bushes on the east and west block morning and afternoon sun.

Plant deciduous trees that loose their leaves in the autumn to admit winter sun. Choose types that are quick-growing and easy to care for in your region. Check with a local nurseryman to determine the best type of trees, when to plant, and method of planting.



Trees for shade: Landscaping is a good long-term investment for residences. Tall deciduous trees on the south block high summer sun while allowing lower winter sun to reach the home. Shorter trees or bushes provide protection from lowangle sun on the east and west.

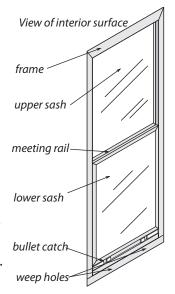
## **EXTERIOR STORM WINDOWS**

Storm windows are relatively expensive when compared to other weatherization measures, and so are not always cost effective. Storm windows can preserve old worn primary windows, though, which can be cheaper than replacing the primary windows.

Aluminum storm window are the best choice if they are well designed and installed properly.

- Frames should have sturdy corners so they don't rack out-of-square during transport and installation.
- Sashes must fit tightly in their frames.
- The gasket sealing the glass should surround the glass's edge and not merely wedge the glass in place against the metal frame.
- The window should be sized correctly and fit tightly in the opening.

The installation of storm windows should follow these guidelines.



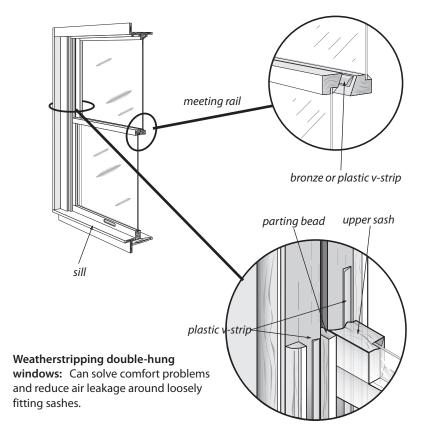
**Aluminum exterior storm windows:** They protect the primary window and add about an R-1 to the window assembly.

- ✓ Do not install new storm windows to replace existing storms if the existing storms are in good condition or can be repaired at a reasonable cost.
- Caulk storm windows around the frame at time of installation, except for weep holes that should not be sealed. If weep holes are not manufactured into new storm window, weep holes should be drilled into them.
- Do not allow storm-windows to restrict emergency egress or ventilation through moveable windows. Choose windows that are openable from the inside, or install pin-on storm sashes that open along with the moveable primary window.

## WINDOW REPAIR AND AIR-LEAKAGE REDUCTION

With the exception of broken glass or missing window panes, windows are rarely the major source of air leakage in a home.

Window weatherstripping is typically not cost-effective but may be installed to solve a comfort problem. Avoid expensive or time-consuming window-repair measures that are implemented to solve minor comfort complaints.



Re-glazing window sashes is time consuming, and is best accomplished as part of a comprehensive window rehabilitation project. Re-glazing wood windows may not be a durable repair without thorough scraping, priming, and painting. Repair measures may include the following measures.

- ✓ Replace missing or broken glass. Use glazing compound and glazier points when replacing glass in older windows. Glass cracks that are not noticeably separated can be ignored.
- ✓ Caulk interior and exterior window frame to prevent air leakage, condensation, and rain leakage. Use sealants with rated adhesion and joint-movement characteristics appropriate for both the window frame and the building materials surrounding the window.
- Replace missing or severely deteriorated window frame components. Extremely damaged wood should filled with a marine epoxy, primed, and painted.
- Adjust window stops if large gaps exist between stop and jamb. Ensure that window operates smoothly following stop adjustment.
- ✓ Weatherstrip large gaps between the sash and the sill or stops. Weatherstrip the meeting rails if needed.
- ✓ Replace or repair missing or non-functional top and side sash locks, hinges or other hardware if such action will significantly reduce air leakage.

Use lead-safe weatherization practices when working on windows. *See page 23*.

## Weatherstripping double-hung windows

Wooden double-hung windows are fairly easy to weatherstrip. Window weatherstripping is mainly a comfort retrofit and a low weatherization priority.

Paint is the primary obstacle when weatherstripping doublehung windows. Often the upper sash has slipped down, and is locked in place by layers of paint, producing a leaking gap between the meeting rails of the upper and lower sashes.

- ✓ To make the meeting rails meet again, either break the paint seal and push the upper sash up, or cut the bottom of the lower sash off to bring it down.
- ✓ To lift the upper sash, cut the paint around its inside and outside perimeter. Use leverage or a small hydraulic jack to lift the sash. Jack only at the corners of the sash. Lifting in the middle will likely break the window.
- ✔ Block, screw, or nail the repositioned upper sash into place.
- ✓ To weatherstrip the window, you must remove the lower sash. Cut the paint where the window stop meets the jamb so the paint doesn't pop off in large flakes as you pry the stop off. Removing one stop is sufficient to remove the bottom sash.
- Scrape excess paint from the sashes and the window sill. You may need to plane the sides so the window operates smoothly.
- ✓ Apply vinyl V-strip to the side jambs, and bronze Vstrip to the meeting rail on the top sash. The point of the bronze V goes skyward. The weatherstrip is caulked on its back side and stapled in place, as shown in the illustration.

#### **Window replacement**

Window replacements are generally not cost-effective energy conservation measures. Replace windows only as emergencyrepair measures when the window is missing, or damaged beyond repair, or found to be cost-effective.

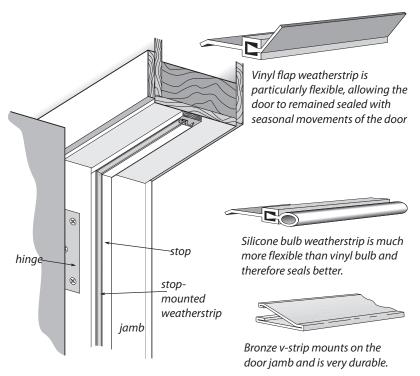
Replacement windows should be double-glazed low-E units with a window unit U-value of 0.40 or less as rated by the National Fenestration Rating Council (NFRC) or approved equal.

#### **DOOR REPAIR MEASURES**

Door measures are usually not cost-effective unless they have a very low cost. Doors have a small surface area and their air leakage is more of a localized comfort problem than a significant energy problem most of the time. However, door operation affects building security and durability, so doors are often an important repair priority.

#### Door weatherstrip, thresholds and sweeps

Door weatherstrip, thresholds and sweeps are marginally cost effective. These measures may be used only if they are found to be cost effective.



**Weatherstripping doors:** Weatherstripping doors is mainly a comfort retrofit. The door should be repaired before weatherstripping by tightening hinges and latches. The door stop should fit tightly against the door when it is closed.

- ✓ Tighten door hardware and adjust stops so door closes snugly against its stops.
- ✓ Use a durable stop-mounted or jamb-mounted weatherstrip material to weatherstrip the door. New weatherstrip must form a tight seal with no buckling or gaps when installed.
- Plane or adjust the door so it closes without rubbing or binding on the stops and jambs, especially in homes that may have lead paint.
- ✓ Install thresholds and door sweeps if needed to prevent air leakage. They should not bind the door. Thresholds should be caulked at the sill and jamb junction.

#### **Door replacement**

Door replacement is rarely a cost-effective energy conservation measure. Replace a door as an emergency-repair, when the door is damaged beyond repair. Tight uninsulated doors in good condition should *never* be replaced.

Replacement exterior doors must have a solid wood core or an exterior-grade foam core. New wood doors should be sealed to prevent deterioration.

# **Door repair**

Door repair items improve home security and building durability. Door repair can also save energy if the door currently has a poor fit. Limit door repair to these tasks.

- Replace missing or inoperable lock sets.
- ✔ Reposition the lock set and strike plate.
- Reposition stops if necessary.
- Seal gaps between the stop and jamb with caulk.

✓ Install a door shoe if needed to repair damage.





Minor door repair: Tightening and adjusting locksets, strike plates, and hinges helps doors work better and seal tighter.

#### Storm doors

Storm doors and screen doors are expensive per square foot of area and most weatherization programs don't install them because all of the common measures described here are considerably more cost-effective. Storm doors can also damage steel insulated doors on sunny exposures by causing them to overheat.

# CHAPTER 4: DIAGNOSING SHELL & DUCT AIR LEAKAGE

The testing described here will help you analyze the existing air barriers and decide whether and where air sealing is needed.

An air barrier, aligned with the insulation, forms the building's thermal boundary. The location and condition of the air barrier has a substantial effect on the insulation's effectiveness.

The energy impact of duct leakage depends on whether the ducts are located within or outside of the thermal boundary. Not all duct leaks are an energy problem.

#### Air leakage effects

Controlling shell air leakage is the key ingredient in a successful weatherization job. The decisions you make about sealing air leaks will have a large effect on a building throughout its lifetime.

- Air leakage can significantly reduce insulation R-value.
- Air leakage can account for up to 40% of a building's heat loss.
- Air leakage moves moisture into and out of the house, and so exerts a wetting and/or drying effect.
- The location and amount of air leakage can determine whether or not a combustion appliance like a furnace or fireplace will vent its gases out the chimney as it should.

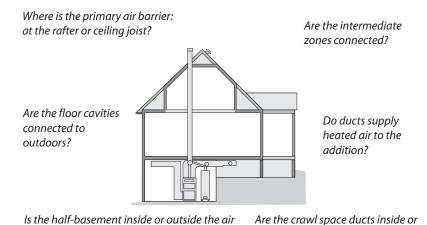
Sometimes air leakage provides ventilation for exhausting pollutants and admitting fresh air. However, air leaks can bring pollutants into the home as easily as they expel or dilute them.

Air sealing or duct sealing may affect combustion-appliance venting by changing house pressures or reducing the available supply of combustion air. After all weatherization measures have been performed, technicians must conduct worst-case draft testing and check the safety of all combustion appliances.

#### Goals of air-leakage testing

The first goal of air-leakage and pressure testing is to decide how much time and effort is required to achieve cost-effective air-leakage and duct-leakage rates, while safeguarding indoor air quality. See page 13.

The second goal of leak testing is to decide where to locate the air barrier when an intermediate zone like an attic or crawl space presents two choices of air barriers. The ceiling is usually the thermal boundary, for example, rather than the roof. However, at the foundation, the air barrier can be located at the first floor or at the foundation wall. Air leakage testing help establish the best place to locate the air barrier.



**Questions to ask during the audit:** Your answers help determine the most efficient and cost-effective location for the air barrier.

outside the air barrier?

Duct leakage in the heating system is now established as one of the major treatable energy problems in homes. However, sealing every joint without testing can be a waste of time and money. Duct-leakage tests help you determine the severity and locations of duct leaks.

barrier? Is it heated?

The reason for the number of air-leakage and duct-leakage tests is that there is so much uncertainty about air leakage and duct leakage. Testing is needed because there simply is no accurate prescriptive method for determining the severity and location of leaks. Depending on the complexity of a home, you may need to perform varying levels of testing to assess shell and duct leakage.

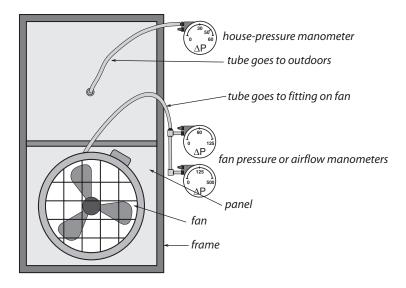
It is most cost-effective to seal the large air leaks first. Chasing small leaks isn't usually worth the effort.

- Perform shell and duct air tightness testing.
- ✓ Analyze the test results to determine if air sealing will be cost-effective.
- ✓ Locate and seal the air leaks.
- ✔ Re-test to assess the effectiveness of air sealing efforts.
- ✓ Stop air sealing when additional air sealing is not costeffective, or when the Building Airflow Standard is reached.

## 4.1 House airtightness testing

House airtightness testing was made possible by the development of the blower door. The blower door measures a home's leakage rate at a standard pressure of 50 pascals. This leakage measurement can be used to compare homes with one another and to set air-leakage standards.

The blower door also allows the technician to test parts of the home's air barrier to locate air leaks. Sometimes air leaks are obvious. More often, the leaks are hidden, and the technician wants to obtain clues about their location. This section outlines the basics of blower door measurement along with some techniques for gathering clues about the location of air leaks.



**Blower door components:** Include the frame, panel, fan, and manometers.

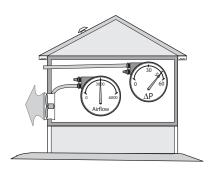
#### WHEN NOT TO AIR SEAL

Perform no air-sealing when these situations present an obvious threat to the occupant's health, the installer's health, the building's durability, or to the effectiveness of the air-sealing materials.

- Moisture has caused structural damage, rot, mold or mildew growth, and can't be corrected.
- Indoor air quality issues can't be resolved.
- Fire hazards jeopardize the building or the occupants' safety.
- Chimney drafts measured at combustion appliances don't meet minimum standards.
- Measured carbon monoxide level exceeds suggested action level.

- Combustion-zone pressure exceeds -4 pascals during a worst-case test.
- The building is already at or below its Building Airflow Standard, and no mechanical ventilation is installed or planned.
- Infestations, vermin, or other sanitary issues can't be corrected.

## 4.2 BLOWER-DOOR TESTING



Standard blower door test: The house is depressurized to –50 pascals and the airflow through the fan is measured.

The blower door creates a 50-pascal pressure difference across the building shell and measures airflow in cubic feet per minute at 50 Pascals (CFM<sub>50</sub>), in order to compare the leakiness of homes. The blower door also creates pressure differences between rooms in the house and intermediate zones like attics and crawl spaces that can give clues about the location and

size of a home's air leaks. See page 61.

#### **Blower-door nomenclature**

Connecting the manometer's hoses correctly is essential for accurate testing. A widely accepted method for communicating correct hose connection helps avoid confusion.

The common nomenclature uses the phrase with-reference-to (WRT), to distinguish between the input zone and reference zone for a particular measurement. The outdoors is the most commonly used reference zone for blower door testing. The reference zone is considered to be the zero point on the pressure scale.

For example, house WRT outdoors = -50 pascals means that the house (input) is 50 pascals negative compared to the outdoors (reference or zerodisplay

channel selector

mode selector

pressure ports:
connect test
area to these
ports

reference ports:
connect
reference area

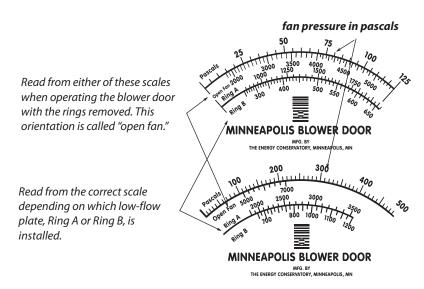
**Digital manometers:** Used to diagnose house and duct pressures quickly and accurately.

point). The pressure reading in the last example is called the house-to-outdoors pressure difference.

## **Low-flow plates**

During the blower door test, the airflow is measured through the fan. This airflow is directly proportional to the surface area of the home's air leaks. For the blower door to measure airflow accurately, the air must be flowing at an adequate speed. Tighter buildings don't have enough air leakage to create an adequate airspeed. This necessitates using one of three low-flow plates provided with the blower door to reduce the fan's opening and increase air speed through the fan to a speed at which it can be measured accurately.

When using one of these low-flow plates, you must read the correct scale on the analog gauges, shown below. When using a digital gauge, follow the manufacturer's instructions for selecting the proper fan configuration corresponding to the correct low-flow plate.



**Blower door analog gauges:** Blower door airflow gauges provide ranges for accurate measurement of homes with a wide variety of airtightness.

## Can't reach fifty

Some homes are so leaky that the blower door isn't powerful enough to depressurize them to –50 pascals. In these cases, you must apply a factor to the airflow you measure at a lower pressure. Those factors are listed in *Table 4-1 on page 116*. Use these factors only when absolutely necessary because they may result in inaccurate air-leakage estimates.

## PREPARING FOR A BLOWER DOOR TEST

Preparing the house for a blower door test involves putting the house in its heating or cooling operating condition with all conditioned zones open to the blower door. Try to anticipate safety problems that the blower door test could cause, particularly with combustion appliances.

✓ Identify the location of the thermal boundary and determine which house zones are conditioned.

- ✓ Identify and repair large air leaks that could prevent the blower door from achieving adequate house pressure.
- Survey pollutants that may pollute the air during a blower door test—wood-stove or fireplace ashes for example.
- Put the house in its heating and/or cooling mode with windows, doors, and vents closed and air registers open.
- ✓ Turn off combustion appliances temporarily.
- ✓ Open interior doors so that all indoor areas inside the thermal boundary are connected to the blower door.
- ✓ Measure house volume if you plan to use ACH<sub>50</sub> (air changes per hour at 50 pascals) or ACH<sub>n</sub> (air changes per hour—natural).

#### Zeroing the manometers

To obtain accurate blower door measurements, you must zero the manometers. The procedure for zeroing a manometer is different for analog manometers versus digital manometers.

Analog manometer: Block the blower door's opening to prevent ambient airflow through the fan. Make sure that the house-pressure hose is connected to outdoors and that the fan hose is disconnected. Tap each gauge face with your finger to make sure that the needle isn't stuck. Use the adjustment screw on the face of the dial to set the needle at exactly zero.

Digital manometer: Block the blower door's opening to prevent ambient airflow through the fan. Make sure that the house-pressure hose is connected to outdoors and that the fan hose is disconnected. Measure the house pressure with the blower door off. If you read a positive house pressure of a few pascals with reference to outdoors, add those pascals to 50 pascals and set the house pressure at 50+ pascals to get your accurate airflow (CFM $_{50}$ ). If you read a negative house pressure with reference to outdoors, subtract those pascals from 50 pascals, and then set

the blower door to produce 50 pascals to get your accurate airflow.

#### **BLOWER DOOR TEST PROCEDURES**

Follow this general procedure when performing a blower-door test.

- 1. Install blower door frame, panel, and fan in an exterior doorway with a clear path to outdoors. On windy days, try to place the fan parallel to the wind direction.
- 2. Follow manufacturer's instructions for fan orientation and manometer setup for either pressurization or depressurization.
- 3. Connect the house-pressure manometer to measure house WRT outdoors. Place the outside hose at least 5 feet to the side of the fan and against the foundation.
- 4. Connect the airflow manometer to measure fan WRT zone near fan inlet. The zone near the fan inlet is indoors for depressurization and outdoors for pressurization.
- Make pretest adjustments to manometers following manufacturer's instructions. Zero manometers as described previously.
- 6. Ensure that children and pets are at a safe distance from the fan. Turn on the fan and increase its speed slowly until you read 50 pascals of pressure difference between indoors and outdoors.
- 7. Read the  $CFM_{50}$  from the airflow manometer or from the second channel of a two-channel digital manometer.
- 8. If the house is so leaky or large that it cannot be depressurized to -50 pascals, depressurize to highest multiple

of 5 and multiply your measured airflow by the "can't reach fifty" (CRF) factors in the conversion table.

9. Record the reading.

Table 4-1: Can't-Reach-Fifty Factors

House Pressui	re 15	20	25	30	35	40	45	
Can't Reach Fifty Factor	2.2	1.8	1.6	1.4	1.3	1.2	1.1	
Courtesy of The Energy Conservatory								

## Blower-door test follow-up

Be sure to return the house to its original condition.

- ✓ Inspect combustion appliance pilot lights to ensure that blower door testing did not extinguish them.
- Reset thermostats of heaters and water heaters that were turned down for testing.
- ✓ Remove any temporary plugs that were installed to increase house pressure.

## **APPROXIMATE LEAKAGE AREA**

There are several ways to convert blower-door  $CFM_{50}$  measurements into square inches of total leakage area. A simple and rough way to convert  $CFM_{50}$  into an approximate leakage area (ALA) is to divide  $CFM_{50}$  by 10. The ALA can help you visualize the size of openings you're looking for in a home or section of a home.

$$ALA = CFM_{50} \div 10$$

## **TARGET AIR-LEAKAGE REDUCTIONS**

Depending on the initial  $CFM_{50}$  blower-door test reading, consider the prescribed target air-leakage reduction values specified below. These percentage reductions represent minimum values.



**Air-leakage targets:** These minimum air-leakage standards are considered unambitious by many.

# **BUILDING AIRFLOW STANDARD (BAS)**

Air leakage must provide fresh outdoor air when no mechanical ventilation system is installed.

The purpose of the Building Airflow Standard (BAS) is to ensure that the dwelling complies with the ASHRAE Standard 62-1989, Standard for Acceptable Indoor Air Quality. This Standard requires at least 15 cfm of fresh outdoor air per person and 0.35 air changes per hour per dwelling unit. The BAS must be calculated for each dwelling and should be determined before weatherization work begins.

The BAS is converted to a CFM $_{50}$  value, using the Building Performance Institute's abbreviated Lawrence Berkeley Laboratory conversion method. The conversion to CFM $_{50}$  makes the determination of whether the dwelling is complying with BAS readily available through the post-weatherization blower door test. The calculation method for the BAS and the information necessary to convert to CFM $_{50}$  is provide below:

#### **Calculating BAS**

This is a 3 step process that requires the following building data:

- 1. Living Space Area (in square feet) -- This is the occupied square feet of the dwelling. If the basement is finished and/or used as living space, include it in your whole house blower door test (door to basement open) and include the basement in the BAS square feet calculation.
- 2. Ceiling height.
- 3. Actual number of occupants.
- 4. Number of stories above grade.
- 5. The Missouri LBL "N" Factor -- Missouri is located almost entirely in LBL climate zone 3 and basically is in the middle of the LBL "N" factor range of 17-20. For the Missouri BAS calculation the "N" Factor to use in the

formula, adjusted for building height correction are provided in the following table:

Table 4-2: Height-Corrected N-Factors for Missouri

Number of Stories	Height Correction Factor	N-Factor
1	1.00	18.5
1.5	.89	16.5
2	.81	15.0
2.5	.76	14.1
3	.72	13.3

**Step 1:** Calculate the ventilation required for the building in cubic feet per minute (CFM):

AIRFLOW IN CFM(B)=
$$\begin{array}{c}
0.35 \times \text{VOLUME} \\
\hline
60
\end{array}$$

Volume = ceiling height (feet) x living space area (sq. feet)

**Step 2:** Calculate the ventilation required for the people:

## AIRFLOW IN $CFM(P) = 15 \times NUMBER OF OCCUPANTS$

**Step 3:** Compare the two numbers derived above. Using the higher airflow requirement, convert to  $CFM_{50}$  by multiplying by the N-factor:

## MINIMUM AIRFLOW (CFM<sub>50</sub>)= AIRFLOW (CFM) $\times$ N

Where N is the LBL conversion factor from the table above

The goal should be to tighten the dwelling to a level equal to the BAS using the cost-effective guidelines described above and not below minimum CFM $_{50}$ . If the dwelling is tighter than the BAS

 ${\rm CFM_{50}}$  before weatherization or if weatherization makes the dwelling tighter than the BAS CFM<sub>50</sub>, corrective action must be taken that may include the installation of mechanical ventilation or other exhausting device.

#### POLLUTANT CONTROL

The control of pollutants such as moisture, radon, and volatile organic compounds is of increasing concern when homes are sealed down to and below the Building Airflow Standard. See page 20.

The control of pollutants at the source is always the best solution, especially so in tighter homes. Mechanical ventilation can help remove and dilute pollutants, but ventilation should not be relied upon as a sole method of pollutant control.

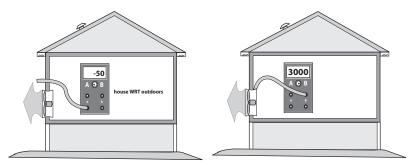
Technicians should survey the home for pollutants before performing air-sealing, and perform the following pollutant control measures if needed.

- Repair roof and plumbing leaks.
- Install a ground moisture barrier over any bare soil in crawl spaces or basements.
- Duct dryers and exhaust fans to the outdoors.
- Confirm that combustion appliance vent systems operate properly. Do not air seal homes with unvented space heaters.
- Move paints, cleaning solvents, and other chemicals out of the conditioned space if possible.

The home's occupants have control over the introduction and spread of many home pollutants. Always educate the residents about minimizing pollutants in the home.

## 4.3 TESTING AIR BARRIERS

Leaks in air barriers cause energy and moisture problems in many homes. Air-barrier leak-testing avoids unnecessary visual inspection and air sealing in hard-to-reach areas.



**Blower door test:** Air barriers are tested during a blower-door test, with the house at a pressure of 50 pascals negative with reference to outdoors. This house has  $3000 \, \text{CFM}_{50}$  of air leakage. Further diagnostic tests can help determine where that leakage is coming from.

Advanced pressure tests measure pressure differences between zones in order to estimate air leakage between zones. Use these tests to make decisions about where to direct your air-sealing efforts.

- Evaluate the airtightness of portions of a building's air barrier—especially floors and ceilings.
- Decide which of two possible air barriers to air seal—for example, the floor versus foundation walls.
- Estimate the air leakage in CFM<sub>50</sub> through a particular air barrier, for the purpose of estimating the effort and cost necessary to seal the leaks.
- Determine whether building cavities like floor cavities, porch roofs, and overhangs are conduits for air leakage.
- Determine whether building cavities, intermediate zones, and ducts are connected by air leaks.

Air-barrier tests provide a range of information from simple clues about which parts of a building are leakiest, to specific estimates of the airflow and hole size through a particular air barrier.

Table 4-3: Building components and their air permeance

Good air barriers (<2 CFM <sub>50</sub> per 100 ft. <sup>2</sup> )	Fair air barriers (2–10 CFM <sub>50</sub> per 100 ft. <sup>2</sup> )	Poor air barriers (10–1000 CFM <sub>50</sub> per 100 ft. <sup>2</sup> )			
5/8" oriented strand board	15# perforated felt	5/8" tongue-and- groove wood sheet- ing			
1/2" drywall	concrete block	6" fiberglass batt			
4-mil air barrier paper	rubble masonry	1.5" wet-spray cellu- lose			
Asphalt shingles and perforated felt over 1/2" plywood	7/16" asphalt-coated fiberboard	wood siding over plank sheathing			
1/8" tempered hard- board	1" expanded polysty- rene	wood shingles over plank sheathing			
painted uncracked lath and plaster	brick veneer	blown fibrous insula- tion			
Measurements taken at 50 pascals pressure. Based on information from: "Air Permeance of Building Materials" by Canada Mortgage Housing Corporation, and estimates of comparable					

## PRIMARY VERSUS SECONDARY AIR BARRIERS

assemblies by the author.

The air barrier should be a material that is continuous, sealed at seams, and relatively impermeable to airflow. Where there are two possible air barriers, the most airtight air barrier is the primary air barrier and the least airtight is the secondary air barrier.

The primary air barrier should be adjacent to the insulation to ensure the insulation's effectiveness. Testing is important to verify that insulation and primary air barrier are together. Sometimes we're surprised during testing to find that our assumed primary air barrier is actually secondary, and the secondary air barrier is actually primary.

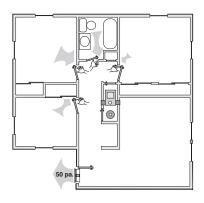
Intermediate zones are unconditioned spaces that are sheltered within the exterior shell of the house. Intermediate zones can either be included inside the home's primary air barrier or outside it. Intermediate zones include: unheated basements, crawl spaces, attics, enclosed porches, and attached garages.

Intermediate zones have two potential air barriers: one between the zone and house and one between the zone and outdoors. For example, an attic or roof space has two air barriers: the ceiling and roof. It is useful to know where the best air barrier is located.

#### SIMPLE PRESSURE TESTS

You can find valuable information about the relative leakiness of rooms or sections of the home during a blowerdoor test. Listed below are five simple methods

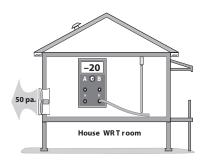
1. Feeling zone air leakage:
Close an interior door
partially so that there is
a one-inch gap between
the door and door jamb.
Feel the airflow along
the length of that crack,
and compare that airflow intensity with air-



Interior door test: Feeling airflow with your hand at the crack of an interior door gives a rough indication of the air leakage coming from the outdoors through that room.

flow from other rooms, using the same technique.

- 2. Observing the ceiling/attic floor: Pressurize the home and observe the top-floor ceiling from the attic with a good flashlight. Air leaks will show in movement of loose-fill insulation, blowing dust, moving cobwebs, etc. You can also use a small piece of tissue paper to disclose air movement.
- 3. *Observing smoke movement:* Pressurize the home and observe the movement of smoke through the house and out of its air leaks.
- 4. Room pressure difference: Check the pressure difference between a closed room or zone and the main body of a home. Larger pressure differences indicate larger potential air leakage within the closed room or else a tight air barrier between the room and main body. A small pressure differences indicate larger potential air leakage within the closed room or else a tight air barrier between the room and main body. A small pressure of the control of the closed room and main body. A small pressure of the close of the closed room and main body. A small pressure of the closed room or the closed room and main body. A small pressure of the closed room or the



Bedroom test: This bedroom pressure difference may be caused by its leaky exterior walls or tight interior walls, separating it from the main body of the home. This test can determine whether or not a confined combustion zone is connected to other rooms.

sure difference means little leakage to the outdoors through the room or a leaky air barrier between the house and room.

5. Room airflow difference: Measure the house  $CFM_{50}$  with all interior doors open. Close the door to a single room, and note the difference in the  $CFM_{50}$  reading. The difference is the approximate leakage through that room.

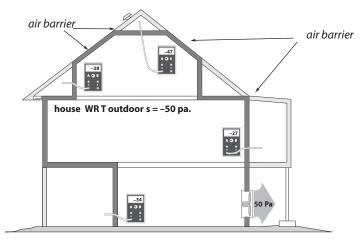
Tests 1, 2, and 3 present good client education opportunities. Feeling airflow or observing smoke are simple observations, but have helped identify many air leaks that could otherwise have remained hidden.

When airflow within the home is restricted by closing a door, as in tests 4 and 5, it may take alternative indoor paths that render these tests somewhat inaccurate. Only practice and experience can guide your decisions about the applicability and usefulness of these general indicators.

## USING A MANOMETER TO TEST AIR BARRIERS

A manometer pressure gauge, used for blower-door testing, also can measure pressures between the house and its intermediate zones during blower-door tests.

The blower door, when used to create a house-to-outdoors pressure of -50 pascals, also creates house-to-zone pressures of between 0 and -50 pascals in the home's intermediate zones. The amount of depressurization depends on the relative leakiness of the zone's two air barriers.



**Pressure-testing building zones:** Measuring the pressure difference across the assumed thermal boundary tells you whether the air barrier and insulation are aligned. If the manometer reads close to -50 pascals, they are aligned, assuming the tested zones are well-connected to outdoors.

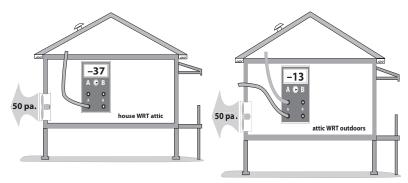
For example, in an attic with a fairly airtight ceiling and a well-ventilated roof, the attic will indicate that it is mostly outdoors

by having a house-to-zone pressure of -45 to -50 pascals. The leakier the ceiling and the tighter the roof, the smaller the negative house-to-zone pressure will be. This holds true for other intermediate zones like crawl spaces, attached garages, and unheated basements.

## Zone leak-testing methodology

Depressurize house to -50 pascals with a blower door.

- 1. Find an existing hole, or drill a hole through the floor, wall, or ceiling between the conditioned space and the intermediate zone.
- 2. Connect the reference port (digital manometer) or the low-pressure port (analog manometer) to a hose connected into the zone.
- 3. Leave the input port (digital manometer) or the highpressure port (analog manometer) open to the indoors.
- 4. Read the negative pressure given by the manometer. This is the house-to-zone pressure, which will be −50 pascals if the air barrier between house and zone is airtight and the zone is open to outdoors.
- 5. If the reading is significantly less negative than -45 pascals, find the air barrier's largest leaks and seal them.
- 6. Repeat steps 1 through 5, performing more air-sealing as necessary, until the pressure is as close to −50 pascals as possible.



House-to-attic pressure: This commonly used measurement is convenient because it requires only one hose.

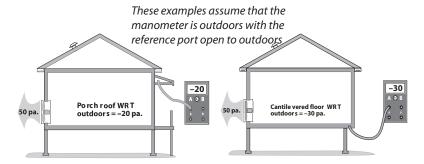
Attic-to-outdoors pressure: This measurement confirms the first because the two add up to –50 pascals.

## **Leak-testing building cavities**

Building cavities such as wall cavities, floor cavities between stories, and dropped soffits in kitchens and bathrooms can also be tested as described above to determine their connection to the outdoors as shown here.

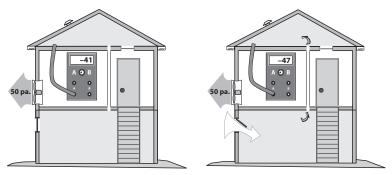
#### **Testing zone connectedness**

Sometimes it is useful to determine whether two zones are connected by an air passage like a large bypass. Measuring the house-to-zone pressure during a blower door test before and then after opening the other zone to the outdoors can establish whether the two zones are connected. You can also open an interior door to one of the zones and check for pressure changes in the other.



Porch roof test: If the porch roof were outdoors, the manometer would read near 0 pascals. We hope that the porch roof is outdoors because it is outside the insulation. We find, however, that it is partially indoors, indicating that it may harbor significant air leaks through the thermal boundary.

Cantilevered floor test: We hope to find the cantilevered floor to be indoors. A reading of –50 pascals would indicate that it is completely indoors. A reading less negative than –50 pascals is measured here, indicating that the floor cavity is partially connected to outdoors.



**Zone connectedness:** The attic measures closer to outdoors after the basement window is opened, indicating that the attic and basement are connected by a large bypass.

## LOCATING THE THERMAL BOUNDARY

Zone pressures are one of several factors used to determine where the thermal boundary should be. Where to air-seal and where to insulate are necessary retrofit decisions. When there are two choices of where to insulate and air-seal, zone pressures along with other considerations help you decide.

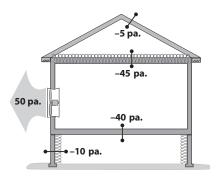
For zone leak-testing, the house-to-zone pressure is often used to determine which of two air barriers is tighter.

- Readings of negative 25-to-50 pascals house-to-attic pressure mean that the ceiling is tighter than the roof. If the roof is quite airtight, achieving a 50-pascal house-toattic pressure difference may be difficult. However if the roof is well-ventilated, achieving a near-50-pascal difference should be possible.
- Readings of negative 0-to-25 pascals house-to-attic pressure mean that the roof is tighter than the ceiling. If the roof is well-ventilated, the ceiling has even more leak area than the roof's vent area.
- Readings around -25 pascals house-to-attic pressure indicate that the roof and ceiling are equally airtight or leaky.

Pressure readings more negative than -45 pascals indicate that the primary air barrier is adequately airtight. Less negative pressure readings indicate that air leaks should be located and sealed.

## Floor vs. crawl space

The floor shown here is tighter than the crawl-space foundation walls. If the crawl-space foundation walls are insulated, holes and vents in the foundation wall should be sealed until the pressure difference between the crawl space and outside is as negative you can



Pressure measurements and air-barrier location: The air barrier and insulation are aligned at the ceiling. The crawl-space pressure measurements show that the floor is the air barrier and the insulation is misaligned—installed at the foundation wall. We could decide to close the crawl space vents and air-seal the crawl space. Then the insulation would be aligned with the air barrier.

make it—ideally more negative than -45 pascals. A leaky foundation wall renders its insulation nearly worthless.

If the floor above the crawl space were insulated instead of the foundation walls in the above example, the air barrier and the insulation would be aligned.

If a floor is already insulated, it makes sense to establish the air barrier there. If the foundation wall is more airtight than the floor, that would be one reason to insulate the foundation wall.

## **Attic boundary**

Generally, the thermal boundary (air barrier and insulation) should be between the conditioned space and attic. An exception would be insulating the roof to enclose an attic air handler and its ducts within the thermal boundary.

## **Garage boundary**

The air barrier should always be between the conditioned space and a tuck-under or attached garage, to separate the living spaces from this unconditioned and often polluted zone.

#### **Duct location**

The location of ducts either within or outside the thermal boundary is an important factor in determining the cost-effectiveness of duct sealing and insulation. Including the heating ducts within the thermal boundary is preferred because it reduces energy waste from duct leakage.

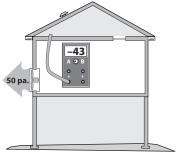
#### ADD-A-HOLE ZONE LEAKAGE MEASUREMENT

If you are still unsure of the location and severity of air leaks after the simpler diagnostic tests, you can use this Add-a-hole procedure to estimate the  ${\rm CFM}_{50}$  of air leakage between the house and attic. Use your programmable calculator to perform the calculations. If you don't have a calculator, use the tables provided here.

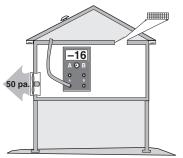
Based on the original house-to-attic pressure you measure, the graph shown here prescribes a second house-to-attic pressure

that you crate by adding a hole through an attic hatch or other opening. You estimate the area of the opening required to achieve that pressure drop. The graph then provides a multiplier to convert square inches of opening to  $CFM_{50}$ . After determining this  $CFM_{50}$  leakage figure, you can determine the percentage of the home's air leakage coming through the attic.

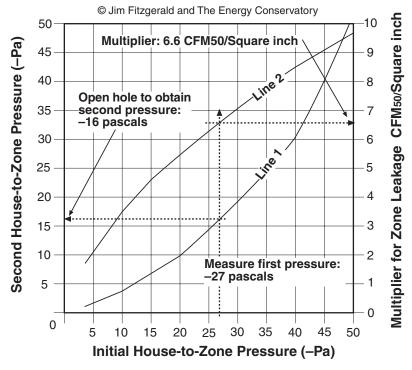
- 1. Establish hoses into attic (or other zone) for measuring house WRT attic.
- 2. Depressurize house to -50 pascals.
- 3. Record the house's CFM $_{50}$ .
- 4. Measure and record the house-to-attic pressure (or other zone pressure). Locate that house-to-zone pressure on the bottom of horizontal axis of the graph shown here. Follow a vertical line to the intersection of Line 1 on the graph. Then follow a horizontal line to the left to where it intersects the left vertical axis. The pressure you find there is the pressure you will create between the house and attic by opening the attic hatch.
- 5. Create the pressure you found in the graph in step 4 by opening the attic hatch while increasing the blower door's speed to maintain –50 pascals house-to-outdoors pressure difference. When you reach your target house-to-attic pressure, make sure the house-to-outdoor pressure is still –50 pascals.
- 6. Estimate the area of the opening you made in Step 5. Go back to the graph and follow a vertical line from the initial house-to-attic pressure to its intersection with Line 2. Then follow a horizontal line to the right to its intersection with the right vertical axis. The number at this intersection is the number of  $CFM_{50}$  represented by each square inch of opening. Multiply this factor times your opening's estimated area in square inches to find the number of  $CFM_{50}$  leaking from the attic. Divide that figure by 10 to get the approximate leakage area.



Add-a-hole first pressure: The first house-to-attic pressure is –27 pascals, which indicates substantial air leakage. Find 27 on the bottom horizontal axis of the graph below, and follow a vertical line up to its intersection with lines 1 and 2.



Add-a-hole second pressure: Opening a hole of approximately 200 square inches drops the second house-to-zone pressure to -16 pascals, which is the target reading obtained from the graph.

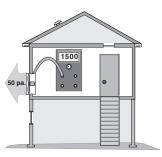


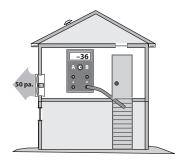
Opening area (sq.in.) x factor (CFM50/sq.in.) =  $CFM_{50}$ 200 sq.in. x 6.6 CFM50/sq.in. = 1320 CFM<sub>50</sub>

## **OPEN-A-DOOR ZONE-LEAKAGE MEASUREMENT**

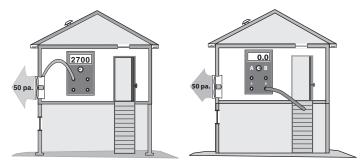
The open-a-door method is a another way of determining how much leakage in  $CFM_{50}$  travels through an intermediate zone like a walk-up attic, basement, or attached garage. This method requires a door between the house and the intermediate zone. Use your programmable calculator to perform the calculations. If you don't have a calculator, use the tables provided here.

- Perform a blower door test and measure CFM<sub>50</sub> with the door between the house and intermediate zone closed.
- 2. During the test, measure the pressure difference between the house and zone.
- 3. Open the door between house and zone and measure  $CFM_{50}$  again. Also measure the pressure difference between the house and zone. It should now be 0 pascals.
- 4. Find the exterior leakage factor from Table 4-4 on page 136, and multiply the  $CFM_{50}$  difference between door-open and door-closed blower door tests by this factor.





**Open-a-door test:** Start with a  $\mathsf{CFM}_{50}$  reading and a pressure difference between house and the basement zone.



**Open-a-door test 2:** Now open the door, and read the new  $CFM_{50}$ , while making sure that there is no pressure difference across the door.

CFM<sub>50</sub> DIFFERENCE X LEAKAGE RATIO =
CFM<sub>50</sub> (HOUSE/ZONE OR ZONE/EXTERIOR)

 $1200 \text{ CFM}_{50} \text{ x .} 96 = 1150 \text{ CFM}_{50}$ 

Calculation for house-to-zone leakage

 $1200 \text{ CFM}_{50} \times 1.78 = 2140 \text{ CFM}_{50}$ 

Calculation for zone-to-outdoors leakage

Table 4-4: Open-a-door CFM<sub>50</sub> leakage

(Per CFM<sub>50</sub> change upon opening)

	use sures		kage tios	House Leaka Pressures Ratio		_	
H/Z	Z/O	Int Lk	Ext Lk	H/Z	Z/O	Int Lk	Ext Lk
48	2	.14	1.14	27	23	2.28	2.53
47	3	.19	1.19	26	24	2.5	2.64
46	4	.25	1.24	25	25	2.77	2.76
45	5	.31	1.29	24	26	3.05	2.89
44	6	.37	1.34	23	27	3.41	3.04
43	7	.43	1.39	22	28	3.73	3.19
42	8	.49	1.44	21	29	4.16	3.36
41	9	.56	1.49	20	30	4.61	3.54
40	10	.63	1.54	19	31	5.2	3.76
39	11	.70	1.6	18	32	5.78	3.98
38	12	.78	1.66	17	33	6.58	4.24
37	13	.87	1.72	16	34	7.38	4.52
36	14	.96	1.78	15	35	8.5	4.87
35	15	1.06	1.85	14	36	9.63	5.21
34	16	1.17	1.91	13	37	11.3	5.68
33	17	1.3	1.98	12	38	12.9	6.14
32	18	1.42	2.06	11	39	15.6	6.79
31	19	1.54	2.12	10	40	18.3	7.43
30	20	1.71	2.23	9	41	22.9	8.4
29	21	1.99	2.31	8	42	27.5	9.37
28	22	2.07	2.42	Courtes	y of Mid	hael Bla	snik

## **DECISIONS ABOUT BASEMENT AND CRAWL SPACES**

The importance of creating an effective air barrier at the foundation walls or floor depends on how much of the home's air leakage is coming through the foundation or floor.

The auditor or technician may choose either the first floor or the foundation wall as the air barrier. If installing insulation in that building component is also a weatherization priority, the insulation is installed in either the floor or the foundation wall, depending on which was chosen as the air barrier. Most basements and crawl spaces in existing homes are uninsulated.

The results of air-barrier tests are only one deciding factor in selecting the thermal boundary's location. Moisture problems, duct and furnace location, and the necessity of crawl-space venting are other important considerations. *See page 88*.

Basement insulation may not be a very practical weatherization option because of moisture concerns, cost, or the need to drywall and tape any newly insulated interior surfaces. Crawl-space insulation poses fewer problems and is often undertaken using foam sheeting, wet-spray cellulose, spray two-part foam, or even foil-faced (FSK) fiberglass.

The tables presented here summarize the decision factors for choosing between the -25 A ¢ B

House-to-crawl-space pressure: Many homes with crawl spaces have an ambiguous thermal boundary at the foundation. Is the air barrier at the floor or foundation wall? Answer: in this case, each forms an equal part of the air barrier.

floor and the foundation wall as the air barrier. You may also encounter situations that aren't addressed here.

When a home has a basement and crawl space connected together, both *Table 4-5 on page 138* and *Table 4-6 on page 139* are relevant to the decision-making process of selecting the air

barrier and site for insulation, if insulation is found to be costeffective. A basement may even be divided from its adjoining crawl space to allow the basement to be within the air barrier and the crawl space to be outside the air barrier.

Table 4-5: Crawl space: Where is the air barrier?

Factors favoring foundation	Factors favoring floor
wall	ractors lavoring noor
Ground moisture barrier and good perimeter drainage present or planned	Damp crawl space with no improvement offered by weatherization
Foundation walls test tighter than floor	Floor air-sealing and insulation are reasonable options, considering access and obstacles
Vents can be closed off	Floor tests tighter than foundation walls
Furnace and ducts located in crawl space	No furnace or ducts present
Concrete or concrete block walls are easily insulated	Building code or code official forbids closing vents
Floor air-sealing and insulation would be more difficult than	Ducts or water pipes located in crawl space
sealing and insulating the foundation	Rubble masonry foundation wall
Foundation wall is insulated	Floor is already insulated

Table 4-6: Unoccupied basement: Where is the air barrier?

Favors foundation wall	Favors floor
Ground drainage and no existing moisture problems	Damp basement with no solution during weatherization
Interior stairway between house and basement	Floor air-sealing and insulation is a reasonable option, consider- ing access and obstacles
Ducts and furnace in basement	No furnace or ducts present
Foundation walls test tighter than the floor	Floor tests tighter than foundation walls
Basement may be occupied some day	Exterior entrance and stairway only
Laundry in basement	Rubble masonry foundation walls
Floor air-sealing and insulation would be very difficult	Dirt floor or deteriorating concrete floor
Concrete floor	Badly cracked foundation walls

## 4.4 DUCT AIRTIGHTNESS TESTING

The blower door can be used for duct-airtightness testing at the same time that it is testing house airtightness. The goal of the tests explained below is to roughly estimate duct leakage so that a decision can be made about the level of duct sealing necessary.

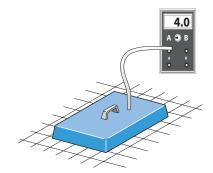
Leaks from ducts that are located within the home's thermal boundary don't tend to incur large energy losses. They can, however, cause pressure imbalances within the home if the leaks are large. Return leaks near combustion appliances can also alter chimney draft and result in backdrafting. Worst-case draft testing is always required after duct sealing to assess the impact of this type of leakage.

#### PRESSURE-PAN TESTING

Pressure-pan tests can help identify leaky or disconnected ducts. With the house depressurized by the blower door to -25 or -50 pascals with reference to outdoors, pressure-pan readings are taken at each supply and return register.

Pressure-pan testing is reliable for mobile homes and small site-built homes where the ducts are outside the air barrier. Pressure pan tests do not accurately disclose duct leakage into the conditioned space.

Basements are often included in the conditioned living space of a home. In these homes, pressure-pan testing isn't necessary, although air-sealing the return ducts may be needed to



A pressure pan: Blocks a single register and measures the air pressure behind it, during a blower door test. The magnitude of that pressure is an indicator of duct leakage.

protect against depressurization. But if the basement is accessed from the outside and rarely used, the basement may be considered outside the conditioned living space. In this case, a window or door between the basement and outdoors should be opened, and any door or hatch between conditioned spaces and basement should be closed during pressure-pan testing.

Follow this procedure to perform a pressure pan test.

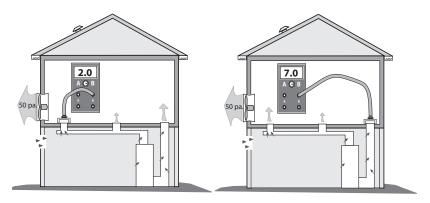
- 1. Install blower door and set-up house for winter conditions. Open all interior doors.
- If the basement is conditioned living space, open the door between basement and upstairs living spaces. If the basement is considered outside the conditioned living space, close the door between basement and upstairs living spaces and open a basement window.

- 3. Turn furnace off. Remove furnace filter, and tape filter slot if one exists. Ensure that all grilles, registers, and dampers are fully open.
- 4. Temporarily seal any outside fresh-air intakes to the duct system. Seal supply registers in zones that are not intended to be heated—an uninhabited basement or crawl space, for example.
- 5. Open attics, crawl spaces, and garages as much as possible to the outside so they don't create a secondary air barrier.
- 6. Connect a hose between pressure pan and the input tap on the digital manometer. Leave the reference tap open.
- 7. With the blower door at -25 pascals, place the pressure pan completely over a grille or register to form a tight seal. Record the reading, which should be a positive pressure.
- 8. If a grille is too large or a supply register is difficult to access (under a kitchen cabinet, for example), seal the grille or register with masking tape. Insert a pressure probe through the masking tape and record reading.
- 9. Repeat this test for each register and grille in a systematic fashion.

#### Pressure-pan duct standards

If the ducts have no leakage to the outside, no pressure difference (0 pascals) will be measured during a pressure-pan test. The higher the measured pressure-pan reading, the more connected the duct is to the outdoors. Readings greater than 1.0 pascal require investigation and sealing of leaks causing the reading.

Pay particular attention to registers connected to ducts that are located in areas outside the conditioned living space. These spaces include attics, crawl spaces, garages, and unoccupied



**Pressure-pan test:** A pressure-pan reading of 2 indicates moderate duct air leakage.

**Problem register:** A pressure reading of 7 pascals indicates major air leakage near the tested register.

basements as described previously. Also test return registers attached to stud cavities or panned joists used as return ducts. Leaky ducts located outside the conditioned living space may show pressure-pan readings of up to 25-to-50 pascals if they have large leaks.

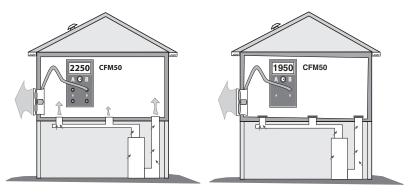
#### **BLOWER-DOOR SUBTRACTION**

This advanced procedure provides additional diagnostic information about ducts. The blower-door subtraction method employs two separate blower-door tests: one test with registers open, and a subsequent test with registers blocked. The test assumes that the reduced blower-door reading, after the registers are blocked, is due to the elimination of duct leakage from outdoors.

For best accuracy, the intermediate zone containing the ducts should be well-connected to the outdoors. If the house-to-duct pressure is –45 pascals or more, with the registers sealed, the test will be relatively accurate. If the house-to-duct pressure is a smaller negative number, this test will significantly underestimate duct leakage. Correction factors listed here make the test

more accurate when the *house-to-duct* pressure is less negative than -45 pascals.

- 1. Take a standard blower door airflow reading (CFM $_{50}$ ) for house air leakage: *house WRT outdoors* = -50 pascals.
- 2. Tape over all supply and return registers and take another  $CFM_{50}$  reading.



**Blower door subtraction:** This test involves two blower door tests: one with the registers open and another with the registers taped closed. The difference between the two CFM<sub>50</sub> readings, adjusted by a correction factor, is a rough estimate of duct leakage.

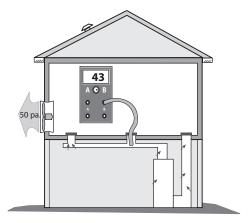
- 3. Subtract the reading obtained in Step 2 from the reading in Step 1 to arrive at an estimate of duct leakage to the outdoors.
- 4. Measure the duct-to-house pressure through a hole in the tape at a central register or at a hole in a supply or return plenum.
- 5. Find the correction factor corresponding to the duct-to-house pressure measured in Step 4.
- 6. Multiply the correction factor times the duct-leakage estimate from Step 3.

#### **Blower-door subtraction standards**

This test gives a very approximate duct-leakage measurement, which is not accurate for small-to-moderate duct leakage.

The blower door measures large airflows, then subtracts them to get a much smaller figure for duct leakage. Small percentage errors between the two readings, due to wind or other variables, produce large errors in estimated duct leakage. The smaller the duct leakage, the greater the error. Duct leakage of 200-to-500 CFM $_{50}$  is common in existing duct systems needing repair.

Setting realistic goals for air sealing depends on the skill level of the technicians. The best technicians may be able to reduce  ${\rm CFM}_{50}$  duct leakage to around 2-to-3 percent of conditioned-floor area. Less experienced technicians may be satisfied with a blower-door subtraction at  ${\rm CFM}_{50}$  of 10 percent of conditioned-floor area.



Correction factor for blower door subtraction: The pressure inside the sealed ducts serves as a correction factor to the CFM<sub>50</sub> airflow difference. Match the duct pressure with the correction factors shown at right, which you multiply times your leakage measurement.

House- 100 49 48 47 46 45 47 48 47 47 47 47 47 47 47 47 47 47 47 47 47	Supraction 1.00 1.09 1.14 1.19 1.24 1.29	30 29 28 27 26 25 25	2.23 2.32 2.42 2.52 2.64 2.76	Courtesy of The Energy Conservatory
44	1.34	24 23	2.89 3.03	[6
42	1.44	22	3.18	١×
41	1.49	21	3.35	g
40	1.54	20	3.54	l e
39	1.60	19	3.74	Ш
38	1.65	18	3.97	اجّا
37	1.71	17	4.23	Ţ
36	1.78	16	4.51	12
35	1.84	15	4.83	S
34	1.91	14	5.20	ΙĔ
33	1.98	13	5.63	ΙĀ
32	2.06	12	6.12	ĮŬ
31	2.14	11	6.71	

#### BDS $CFM_{50} = CFM_{50}$ DIFFERENCE X CORRECTION FACTOR

From the example: "Blower door subtraction" on page 143 and the correction factor shown above, the calculation would go as follows.

BDS  $CFM_{50} = 300 CFM_{50} X 1.39 = 417 CFM_{50}$ 

#### 4.5 DUCT-INDUCED ROOM PRESSURES

An improperly balanced air-handling system can reduce comfort, building durability, and indoor air quality. Duct-induced room pressures can increase air leakage through the building shell from 1.5 to 3 times, compared to when the air handler is off.

The following test measures pressure differences between the main body of the house and outdoors, between each room and outdoors, and between the combustion zone and outdoors. A pressure difference greater than +4.0 pascals or more negative than -4.0 pascals should be corrected. If the pressure imbalance is the result of occupant behavior such as covering supply or return grilles, discuss these issues with the client.

#### **DOMINANT DUCT LEAKAGE**

This test helps determine whether sealing efforts should be directed to the supply or return system. It does not measure the amount of leakage present.

- 1. Set up house for winter conditions. Close all windows and exterior doors. Turn-off all exhaust fans.
- 2. Open all interior doors, including door to basement.
- 3. Turn on the air handler.
- 4. Measure the house-to-outdoors pressure difference.

A positive pressure indicates that the return ducts (which pull air from leaky intermediate zones) are leakier than the supply ducts. A negative pressure indicates that the supply ducts (which push air into intermediate zones through their leaks) are leakier than return ducts. A pressure at or near zero indicates equal supply and return leakage or else little duct leakage.





**Dominant return leaks:** When return leaks are larger than supply leaks, the house shows a positive pressure with reference to the outdoors.

**Dominant supply leaks:** When supply leaks are larger than return leaks, the house shows a negative pressure with reference to the outdoors.

#### **ROOM PRESSURE IMBALANCE**

- 1. Leave the house in winter conditions, and leave the air handler running.
- 2. Close interior doors.
- 3. Place hose from input tap on the manometer under one of the closed interior doors. Leave reference tap connected to outdoors.
- 4. Read and record this pressure measurement for each room. This pressure's magnitude indicates the degree to which the air-handler's airflow is unbalanced between supply and return.

If the pressure difference is more than  $\pm$  4.0 pascals with the air handler operating, pressure relief is necessary. To estimate the

amount of pressure relief, slowly open door until pressure difference drops to between +4.0 pascals and -4.0 pascals. Estimate area of open door. This is the area required to provide pressure relief. Pressure relief may include undercutting the door or installing transfer grilles. For information on reducing ductinduced room pressures, *see page 145*.

Blocked return path: With interior doors closed, the large positive pressure in the bedroom is caused by the lack of a air return register in the bedroom. The airflow in this forced-air system is unbalanced, creating this pressure, and forcing room air through the room's air leaks.



# CHAPTER 5: HVAC SERVICE TO OPTIMIZE ENERGY EFFICIENCY

As an HVAC technician, you can improve customer satisfaction, outshine your competition, and open new sales and marketing opportunities by specializing in energy efficiency.

This field guide outlines how to integrate energy-efficiency testing and improvements into your existing installation and service procedures.

Efficiency, comfort, and safety problems with residential heating and cooling systems are rampant throughout the U.S. The main cause of these problems is a failure to measure performance during installation and service. Neme, Proctor, and Nadel reviewed on many individual studies of installation flaws in their EPA-sponsored report, entitled "National Energy Savings Potential from Addressing Residential HVAC Installation Problems."

#### **5.1** THE HOUSE AS A SYSTEM

A home's design should integrate the building shell with heating, cooling, and ventilation systems. A well-insulated and airtight home compliments a well-designed and installed HVAC system. And unfortunately, a drafty, unshaded, and poorly insulated home detracts from the performance of the HVAC system.



The building shell's poor thermal performance overwhelms the HVAC system during extreme weather, causing customer complaints. Sometimes the best solution to a customer complaint involves adding insulation, sealing air leaks, or shading win-

Table 5-1: Compiled Research Results: Field Studies on HVAC Performance

Installation-Related Problem	<b>%</b> *	Savings Potential
Duct air leakage (Ave. 270 CFM <sub>25</sub> )	70%	17% Ave.
Inadequate airflow	70%	7% Ave.
Incorrect charge	74%	12% Ave.
Oversized by 50% or more	47%	2-10%

<sup>\*</sup> Percent of tested homes found with a significant problem.

dows, rather than by trying to squeeze better performance out of the heating or cooling system.

You may have been blamed more than once for a poorly performing building shell. We suggest that you get better educated on how the home functions as a system. In particular, moisture problems are a frequent cause of poor cooling performance and respiratory problems. Many HVAC contractors are now working with insulation contractors and other trades to provide a more integrated energy-and-comfort packages for their customers.

### **5.2 COMBINING QUALITY SERVICE WITH ENERGY EFFICIENCY**

While many customers may still want the minimum acceptable installation and service work, many others are willing to pay for optimized installation and service.

<sup>\*</sup> The number of homes of the duct-leakage studies was around 14,000; the number for the other problems was over 400 each. Report sponsored by Environmental Protection Agency (EPA)

We suggest using measurements to verify correct system performance. Engineers call this process *commissioning*. Commissioning means testing the HVAC system to determine whether it is performing according to manufacturer's and designer's specifications.

System Airflow

Logical Design

Planning

Sizing

Selection

Duct Airtightness

Commissioning a residential gas furnace involves, at minimum, the following steps.

- 1. Measuring house pressure in the combustion zone to ensure that negative pressure, if present, is within acceptable limits. This measurement is also an indicator of the availability of combustion air.
- 2. Testing for the presence of carbon monoxide, a poisonous gas that indicates incomplete combustion.
- Perform combustion test and airflow checks to verify conformance with manufacturer's and designer's specifications.
- 4. Measuring gas pressure and input, if necessary to troubleshoot combustion problems.

Commissioning ducts involves measuring duct leakage and taking steps to reduce the duct air leakage to a specific standard. This is important step for both heating and cooling.

Commissioning a residential air conditioner involves the following steps.

- 1. Measuring airflow and taking whatever steps necessary to improve airflow, including adding ducts, enlarging ducts, cleaning the blower, cleaning indoor coil, and balancing room airflows.
- 2. Measuring one of two indicators of refrigerant charge and adding or removing refrigerant as necessary to create the correct charge.

- 3. Verifying correct functioning and settings of electric controls including fan speeds for heating and cooling, outdoor thermostat for heat pumps, thermostat functioning, appropriate program for programmable thermostats.
- 4. Noting whether excessive air leakage, moisture problems, lack of insulation, or excessive solar gain through windows is overpowering the cooling system.

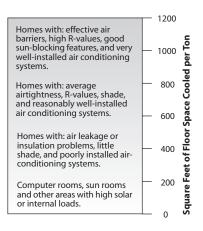
#### Access for installation and services

Technicians frequently are provided with too little space to install the equipment with adequate clearance for maintenance. If technicians don't have easy access to equipment, which requires periodic inspection and cleaning, service will likely be neglected. The HVAC contractor should be part of the design team so that he can ensure there is ample space reserved for the equipment and ductwork.

#### **5.3** EQUIPMENT SIZING AND SELECTION

Equipment selection should be based on calculated heating and cooling loads and calculated duct sizes. Since hand calculations are complicated and tedious, progressive contractors use computer software for these design calculations.

Air handlers with their heating and cooling equipment tend to be significantly oversized. One reason is that HVAC contractors don't have adequate information or confidence about the building where they are installing the system. For example, is the natural air-leakage rate 0.1 or 1 air changes per hour? Without a blower door test, how is the HVAC contractor to know?



**Existing homes and their cooling loads:** The characteristics of the building shell and climate, along with the quality of air-conditioner installation, determine how many square feet of floor space can be cooled with each ton of air conditioner capacity.

Another reason for oversizing the heating and cooling equipment are unnecessary safety factors, applied to the cooling or heating output suggested by sizing calculations. The Manual J computer software contains a safety factor of around 25%. If the contractor adds another 25% safety factor that makes 50% to 60% oversizing. If the wholesaler suggests bumping the output up another notch, the output can end up double or more what the home actually requires during outdoor design conditions.

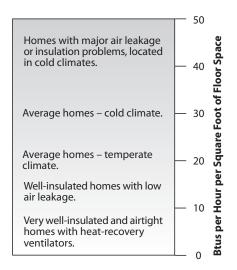
Unfortunately, these safety factors may actually be needed to counteract the following installation problems, which sap the air handler's heating and cooling capacity.

- 1. Duct air leakage
- 2. Inadequate airflow
- 3. Incorrect refrigerant charge

Preventing these installation problems, by using the suggestions contained in this field guide, eliminates the need for compensatory oversizing. Better planning and cooperation between general contractor and HVAC contractor can allow the HVAC contractor more space and time to provide a quality installation. And, a better building shell with a high-quality insulation package and an effective air barrier can allow the HVAC contractor to install the minimum size air handler with minimum heating

and cooling capacity, which provides the following benefits, compared to current typical design and installation practices.

- 1. Smaller ducts occupy less space and are less likely to be deformed when installed in tight building cavities.
- 2. Prescribed lower airflow is easier to achieve.
- 3. Greater operating efficiency and lower operating costs.
- 4. More predictable and less troublesome operation.
- 5. Longer equipment life span and lower maintenance cost.
- 6. Lower initial equipment and duct costs.
- 7. Better comfort and quieter operation.



Existing homes and their heating loads: The characteristics of the building shell and climate determine how many Btus/hour of heat are needed per square foot of floor space at design winter conditions. Systems with two-stage compressors and two-stage gas furnaces can aide in achieving some of these goals when the HVAC contractor can't affect the home's design and construction. The first stage of heating or cooling is a far better match for most conditions than the unit's maximum output.

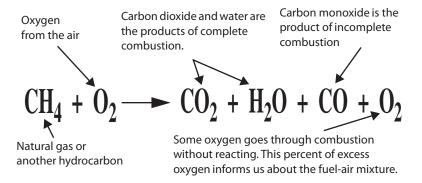
The best homes being built today function as integrated systems. The building shell minimizes heat loss in winter and heat gain in summer,

and such a home requires a small heating and cooling system. Much of the year, neither heating nor cooling is needed. Since the shell is airtight, mechanical ventilation systems are included in these integrated homes.

Customer comfort and satisfaction with these homes are very high. Even some home retrofitters are achieving a similar high standard for the building shell and HVAC. Considering the improvements in comfort, operating costs, health, and safety that are possible from this higher standard, the effort and initial expense is an excellent investment indeed.

# CHAPTER 6: COMBUSTION SAFETY AND EFFICIENCY TESTING

This chapter specifies maintenance, repair, and efficiency improvements to the combustion systems of heating appliances. The procedures outlined here require training, skill, and experience, as well as a clear understanding of the health and safety hazards associated with combustion heating systems.



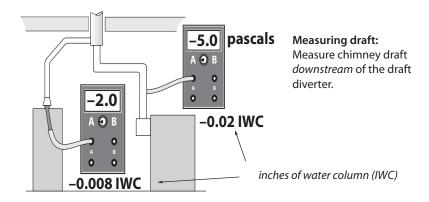
#### **6.1 GAS BURNER TESTING**

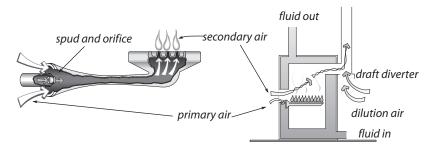
Gas burners should be inspected and maintained every 2 to 4 years. These following specifications apply to gas furnaces, boilers, water heaters, and space heaters.

Perform the following inspection procedures and maintenance practices on all gas-fired furnaces, boilers, water heaters, and space heaters, as necessary. The goal of these measures is to reduce carbon monoxide (CO), stabilize flame, and verify the operation of safety controls.

✓ Look for soot, melted wire insulation, and rust in the burner and manifold area outside the fire box. These signs indicate flame roll-out, combustion gas spillage, and CO production. See page 183.

- ✓ Inspect the burners for dust, debris, misalignment, flame-impingement, and other flame-interference problems. Clean, vacuum, and adjust as needed.
- ✓ Inspect the heat exchanger for leaks. *See page 242*.
- ✓ Furnaces and boilers should have dedicated circuits with fused disconnects. Assure that all 120-volt wiring connections are enclosed in covered electrical boxes.
- ✓ Determine that pilot is burning (if equipped) and that main burner ignition is satisfactory.
- ✓ Sample the undiluted combustion gases with a calibrated flue-gas analyzer during operation. Carbon monoxide should be less than 100 parts per million (ppm).
- ✓ Test pilot-safety control for complete gas valve shutoff when pilot is extinguished.
- ✓ Check the thermostat's heat-anticipator setting. The thermostat's heat-anticipator setting should match the measured current in the 24-volt control circuit.
- Check venting system for proper size and pitch. See page 185.
- Check venting system for obstructions, blockages, or leaks.
- Measure chimney draft downstream of the draft diverter and check for spillage. See page 182.
- ✓ Test to ensure that the high-limit control extinguishes the burner before furnace temperature rises to 200° F.
- ✓ Measure gas input, and observe flame characteristics if soot, CO, or other combustion problems are present.
- Open a window while testing for CO to see if CO is reduced by increasing combustion air. See page 201.





**Atmospheric, open-combustion gas burners:** Combustion air comes from indoors in open-combustion appliances. These burners use the heat of the flame to pull combustion air into the burner. Dilution air, entering at the draft diverter, prevents over-fire draft from becoming excessive.

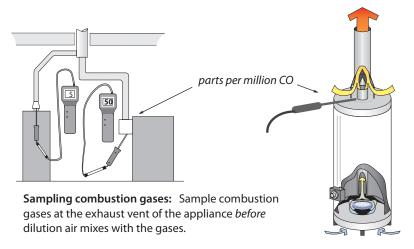


Table 6-1: Combustion Standards for Gas Furnaces

Performance Indicator	SSE 70+	SSE 80+	SSE 90+	
Combustion-zone pressure (Pa)	–4 Pa.	−5 Pa.	–10 Pa.	
Carbon monoxide (CO) (ppm)	≤ 100 ppm	≤ 100 ppm	≤ 100 ppm	
Stack temperature (°F)	350°–475°	325°-450°	≤ 120°	
Heat rise (°F)	40-70°*	40-70°*	30-70°*	
Oxygen (%O2)	5–10%	4–9%	4–9%	
Gas pressure Inches (IWC)	3.2–3.8 IWC*	3.2–3.8 IWC*	3.2–3.8 IWC*	
Steady-state efficiency (SSE) (%)	72–78%	78–82%	92–97%	
Draft (Pa)	–5 Pa	–5 Pa	+25–60 Pa	
* pmi = per manufacturer's instructions				

Proceed with burner maintenance and adjustment when:

- CO is greater than 100 ppm.
- Visual indicators of soot or flame roll-out exist.
- Burners are visibly dirty.
- Measured draft is inadequate. See page 182.
- The appliance has not been serviced for two years or more.

Gas-burner maintenance includes the following measures.

- Remove causes of CO and soot, such as over-firing, closed primary air intake, flame impingement, and lack of combustion air.
- Remove dirt, rust, and other debris that may be interfering with the burners. Clean the heat exchanger, if necessary.

- ✓ Take action to improve draft, if inadequate because of improper venting, obstructed chimney, leaky chimney, or depressurization. See page 183.
- Seal leaks in vent connectors and chimneys.
- Adjust gas input if combustion testing indicates overfiring or underfiring.

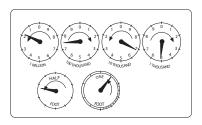
Table 6-2: Minimum Worst-Case Draft for Gas Appliances

Outdoor Ter	mperature	(Degrees F)	
Appliance	<10	10-90	>90
Gas-fired furnace, boiler, or water heater with atmospheric chimney	–2.5 Pa.	– 2.75 Pa. (T outside/ 40)	–.5 Pa.

#### Measuring BTU input on natural gas appliances

Use the following procedure when it's necessary to measure the input of a natural gas appliance.

1. Turn off all gas combustion appliances such as water heaters, dryers, cook stoves, and space heaters that are connected to the meter you are timing, except for the appliance you wish to test.



Gas meter dial: Use the number of seconds per revolution of the one-foot dial and the table on the following page to find the appliance's input.

2. Fire the unit being tested, and watch the dials of the gas meter.

Table 6-3: Input in thousands of Btu/hr for 1000 Btu/cu. ft. gas

15       120       240       480       40       45       90       180       70       26       51       10         16       112       225       450       41       44       88       176       72       25       50       10         17       106       212       424       42       43       86       172       74       24       48       9         18       100       200       400       43       42       84       167       76       24       47       9         19       95       189       379       44       41       82       164       78       23       46       9         20       90       180       360       45       40       80       160       80       22       45       9         21       86       171       343       46       39       78       157       82       22       44       8         22       82       164       327       47       38       77       153       84       21       43       8         23       78       157       313       48       37       75<	
16       112       225       450       41       44       88       176       72       25       50       10         17       106       212       424       42       43       86       172       74       24       48       9         18       100       200       400       43       42       84       167       76       24       47       9         19       95       189       379       44       41       82       164       78       23       46       9         20       90       180       360       45       40       80       160       80       22       45       9         21       86       171       343       46       39       78       157       82       22       44       8         22       82       164       327       47       38       77       153       84       21       43       8         23       78       157       313       48       37       75       150       86       21       42       8         24       75       150       300       49       37       73 <td>ı. ft.</td>	ı. ft.
17     106     212     424     42     43     86     172     74     24     48     9       18     100     200     400     43     42     84     167     76     24     47     9       19     95     189     379     44     41     82     164     78     23     46     9       20     90     180     360     45     40     80     160     80     22     45     9       21     86     171     343     46     39     78     157     82     22     44     8       22     82     164     327     47     38     77     153     84     21     43     8       23     78     157     313     48     37     75     150     86     21     42     8       24     75     150     300     49     37     73     147     88     20     41     8       25     72     144     288     50     36     72     144     90     20     40     8       26     69     138     277     51     35     71     141     94 <td< td=""><td>)3</td></td<>	)3
18       100       200       400       43       42       84       167       76       24       47       9         19       95       189       379       44       41       82       164       78       23       46       9         20       90       180       360       45       40       80       160       80       22       45       9         21       86       171       343       46       39       78       157       82       22       44       8         22       82       164       327       47       38       77       153       84       21       43       8         23       78       157       313       48       37       75       150       86       21       42       8         24       75       150       300       49       37       73       147       88       20       41       8         25       72       144       288       50       36       72       144       90       20       40       8         26       69       138       277       51       35       71	00
19     95     189     379     44     41     82     164     78     23     46     9       20     90     180     360     45     40     80     160     80     22     45     9       21     86     171     343     46     39     78     157     82     22     44     8       22     82     164     327     47     38     77     153     84     21     43     8       23     78     157     313     48     37     75     150     86     21     42     8       24     75     150     300     49     37     73     147     88     20     41     8       25     72     144     288     50     36     72     144     90     20     40     8       26     69     138     277     51     35     71     141     94     19     38     7       27     67     133     267     52     35     69     138     98     18     37     7	7
20       90       180       360       45       40       80       160       80       22       45       9         21       86       171       343       46       39       78       157       82       22       44       8         22       82       164       327       47       38       77       153       84       21       43       8         23       78       157       313       48       37       75       150       86       21       42       8         24       75       150       300       49       37       73       147       88       20       41       8         25       72       144       288       50       36       72       144       90       20       40       8         26       69       138       277       51       35       71       141       94       19       38       7         27       67       133       267       52       35       69       138       98       18       37       7	5
21     86     171     343     46     39     78     157     82     22     44     8       22     82     164     327     47     38     77     153     84     21     43     8       23     78     157     313     48     37     75     150     86     21     42     8       24     75     150     300     49     37     73     147     88     20     41     8       25     72     144     288     50     36     72     144     90     20     40     8       26     69     138     277     51     35     71     141     94     19     38     7       27     67     133     267     52     35     69     138     98     18     37     7	2
22     82     164     327     47     38     77     153     84     21     43     8       23     78     157     313     48     37     75     150     86     21     42     8       24     75     150     300     49     37     73     147     88     20     41     8       25     72     144     288     50     36     72     144     90     20     40     8       26     69     138     277     51     35     71     141     94     19     38     7       27     67     133     267     52     35     69     138     98     18     37     7	0
23     78     157     313     48     37     75     150     86     21     42     8       24     75     150     300     49     37     73     147     88     20     41     8       25     72     144     288     50     36     72     144     90     20     40     8       26     69     138     277     51     35     71     141     94     19     38     7       27     67     133     267     52     35     69     138     98     18     37     7	8
24     75     150     300     49     37     73     147     88     20     41     8       25     72     144     288     50     36     72     144     90     20     40     8       26     69     138     277     51     35     71     141     94     19     38     7       27     67     133     267     52     35     69     138     98     18     37     7	6
25     72     144     288     50     36     72     144     90     20     40     8       26     69     138     277     51     35     71     141     94     19     38     7       27     67     133     267     52     35     69     138     98     18     37     7	4
26     69     138     277     51     35     71     141     94     19     38     7       27     67     133     267     52     35     69     138     98     18     37     7	2
27 67 133 267 52 35 69 138 98 18 37 7	0
	6
	4
28 64 129 257 53 34 68 136 100 18 36 7	2
29 62 124 248 54 33 67 133 104 17 35 6	9
30 60 120 240 55 33 65 131 108 17 33 6	7
31 58 116 232 56 32 64 129 112 16 32 6	4
32 56 113 225 57 32 63 126 116 15 31 6	2
33 55 109 218 58 31 62 124 120 15 30 6	0
34 53 106 212 59 30 61 122 130 14 28 5	5
35 51 103 206 60 30 60 120 140 13 26 5	1
36 50 100 200 62 29 58 116 150 12 24 4	8
37 49 97 195 64 29 56 112 160 11 22 4	5
38 47 95 189 66 29 54 109 170 11 21 4	2
39 46 92 185 68 28 53 106 180 10 20 4	0

- 3. Carefully count how long it takes for one revolution of  $^{1}/_{2}$ , 1, or 2 cubic-foot dial. Find that number of seconds in *Table 6-3* in the columns marked "Seconds per Revolution." Follow that row across to the right to the correct column for the  $^{1}/_{2}$ , 1, or 2 cubic-foot dial. Note that you must multiply the number in the table by 1000. Record the input in thousands of Btus per hour.
- 4. If the measured input is higher or lower than input on the name plate by more than 10%, adjust gas pressure up or down within a range of 3.2 to 3.9 IWC until the approximately correct input is achieved.
- 5. If the measured input is still out of range after adjusting gas pressure to these limits, replace the existing orifices with larger or smaller orifices sized to give the correct input.

Table 6-4: Combustion Problems and Possible Solutions

Problem	Possible causes and solutions
Weak draft with CAZ depressurization	Return duct leaks, clothes dryer, exhaust fans, other chimneys. Seal return leaks. Provide make-up air.
Weak draft with no CAZ depressuriza- tion	Chimney blocked or leaky or else CAZ is too airtight.
Carbon monoxide	Mixture too rich or too lean. Adjust gas pressure. Check chimney and combustion air for code compliance.
Stack temperature or heat rise too high or low	Adjust fan speed or gas pressure. Improve ducts to increase airflow.
Oxygen too high or low	Adjust gas pressure, but don't increase CO level.

#### **6.2** LEAK-TESTING GAS PIPING

Natural gas and propane piping systems may leak at their joints and valves. Find gas leaks with an electronic combustible-gas detector, often called a gas sniffer. A gas sniffer will find all significant gas leaks if used carefully. Remember that natural gas rises from a leak and propane falls, so position the sensor accordingly.

- Sniff all valves and joints with the gas sniffer.
- ✓ Accurately locate leaks using a non-corrosive bubbling liquid, designed for finding gas leaks.
- ✓ All gas leaks should be repaired.
- Replace kinked or corroded flexible gas connectors.

#### **6.3** GAS RANGE AND OVEN SAFETY

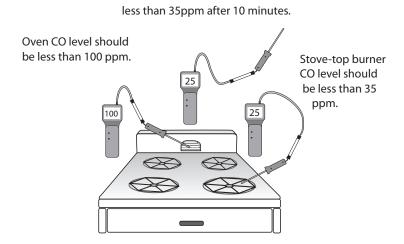
Gas ranges and ovens can produce significant quantities of CO in a kitchen. Overfiring, dirt buildup, and foil installed around burners are frequent causes of CO. Oven burners are likely to produce CO even when not obstructed by dirt or foil. Test the range and oven for safety following these steps and take the recommended actions before or during weatherization.

- 1. Test each stove-top burner separately, using a digital combustion analyzer or CO meter and holding the probe about 8 inches above the flame.
- Clean and adjust burners producing more than 25 parts per million (ppm). Burners often have an adjustable gas control.
- 3. Turn on the oven to bake at high temperature. Sample the CO level in exhaust gases at the oven vent and in the ambient air after 10 minutes.
- 4. Actions include cleaning the oven, removing aluminum foil, or adjusting the burner's adjustable gas control.

5. If the CO reading is over 100 ppm or if the ambient-air reading rises to 35 ppm or more during the test, abort the test.

Most range and oven burners are equipped with adjustable needle-and-seat valves. Most ranges also have an adjustable gas regulator that services the entire unit.

Ambient-air CO level should be



Advise the client of the following important operating practices.

- ✓ Never install aluminum foil around a range burner or oven burner.
- ✓ Never use a range burner or gas oven as a space heater.
- ✓ Open a window and turn on the kitchen exhaust fan when using the range or oven.
- ✓ Keep range burners and ovens clean to prevent dirt from interfering with combustion.
- ✔ Burners should display hard blue flames. Yellow or white flames, wavering flames, or noisy flames should be investigated by a trained gas technician.

✔ Buy and install a CO detector, and discontinue use of the range and oven if the CO level rises above 25 ppm in ambient air.

#### **6.4** OIL-BURNER SAFETY AND EFFICIENCY

Oil burners require annual maintenance to retain their operational safety and combustion efficiency. Testing for combustion efficiency (steady-state efficiency), draft, carbon monoxide, and smoke should be used to guide and evaluate maintenance. These procedures pertain to oil-fired furnaces, boilers, and water heaters.

#### **OIL-BURNER INSPECTION AND TESTING**

Use visual inspection and combustion testing to evaluate oil burner operation. An oil burner passing visual inspection and giving good test results may need no maintenance. If the test results are fair, adjustments may be necessary. Unsatisfactory test results may indicate the need to replace the burner or the entire heating unit.

Follow these steps to achieve a minimum standard for oilburner safety and efficiency.

- ✓ Inspect burner and appliance for signs of soot, overheating, fire hazards, corrosion, or wiring problems.
- ✓ Verify that all oil-fired heaters are equipped with a barometric draft control, unless they have high-static burners or are mobile home furnaces.
- ✓ Each oil furnace or boiler should have a dedicated electrical circuit. Assure that all 120-volt wiring connections are enclosed in covered electrical boxes.
- Inspect fuel lines and storage tanks for leaks.
- Inspect heat exchanger and combustion chamber for cracks, corrosion, or soot buildup.

- ✔ Check to see if flame ignition is instantaneous or delayed. Flame ignition should be instantaneous, except for pre-purge units where the blower runs for a while before ignition.
- ✓ Sample undiluted flue gases with a smoke tester, following the smoke-tester instructions. Compare the smoke smudge left by the gases on the filter paper with the manufacturer's smoke-spot scale to determine smoke number.
- ✓ Analyze the flue gas for O₂ or CO₂, temperature, CO, and steady-state efficiency (SSE). Sample undiluted flue gases between the barometric draft control and the appliance.

Table 6-5: Min. Combustion Standards – Oil-Burning Appliances

Oil Combustion Performance Indicator	Non-Flame Retention	
Oxygen (% O <sub>2</sub> )	4-9%	4-7%
Stack temperature (°F)	325°-600°	300°-500°
Carbon monoxide (CO) parts per million (ppm)	≤ 100 ppm	≤ 100 ppm
Steady-state efficiency (SSE) (%)	≥ 75%	≥ 80%
Smoke number (1–9)	≤ 2	≤ 1
Excess air (%)	≤ 100%	≤ 25%
Oil pressure pounds per square inch (psi)	≥ 100 psi	≥ 100-150 psi (pmi)*
Over-fire draft (IWC negative)	5 Pa. or .02 IWC	5 Pa. or .02 IWC
Flue draft (IWC negative)		10–25 Pa. or 0.04–0.1IWC
* pmi = per manufacturer's specifications		

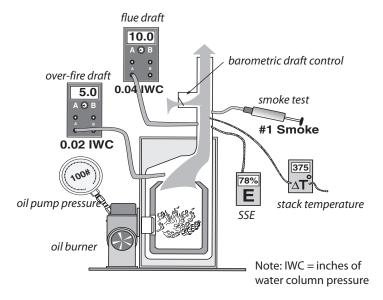
Measure flue draft between the appliance and barometric draft control and over-fire draft over the fire inside the firebox.

Table 6-6: Minimum Worst-Case Draft for Oil-Fired Appliances

	Ou	tdoor Te	mperatui	e (Degre	es F)
Appliance	<20	21-40	41-60	61-80	>80
Oil-fired furnace, boiler, or water heater with atmo- spheric chimney	–15 Pa. –0.06 IWC	– 13 Pa. –0.053 IWC	–11 Pa. –0.045 IWC	–9 Pa. –0.038 IWC	–7 Pa. –0.030 IWC

- ✓ Measure high-limit shut-off temperature and adjust or replace the high-limit control if the shut-off temperature is more than 250° F for furnaces or 180° F for hotwater boilers.
- Measure oil-pump pressure, and adjust to manufacturer's specifications if necessary.
- Measure transformer voltage, and adjust to manufacturer's specifications if necessary.
- Assure that barometric draft controls are mounted plumb and level and that the damper swings freely.

✓ Time the CAD cell control or stack control to verify that the burner will shut off, within 45 seconds, when the cad cell is blocked from seeing the flame.

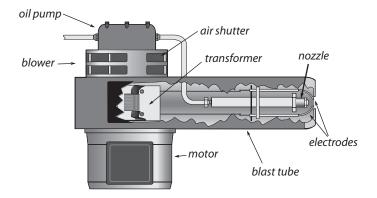


**Measuring oil-burner performance:** To measure oil-burning performance indicators, a manometer, flue-gas analyzer, smoke tester, and pressure gauge are required.

#### **OIL BURNER MAINTENANCE AND ADJUSTMENT**

After evaluating the oil burner's initial operation, perform some or all of the following maintenance tasks as needed to optimize safety and efficiency as part of weatherization service.

- ✔ Verify correct flame-sensor operation.
- ✓ Replace burner nozzle after matching the nozzle size to the home's heat-load requirements.
- ✔ Clean the burner's blower wheel.
- ✓ Replace oil filter(s).
- Clean or replace air filter.

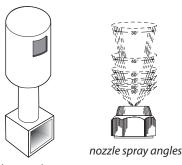


**Oil burner:** Performance and efficiency will deteriorate over time if neglected. Annual maintenance is recommended.

- Remove soot and sludge from combustion chamber.
- ✔ Remove soot from heat exchange surfaces.
- Clean dust, dirt, and grease from the burner assembly.
- ✓ Set oil pump to correct pressure.
- ✓ Adjust air shutter to achieve oxygen and smoke values, specified in *Table 6-5 on page 167*.
- ✓ Adjust barometric damper for flue draft of 5–10 pascals or 0.02-to-0.04 IWC (before barometric damper).
- Adjust gap between electrodes to manufacturer's specifications.
- Repair the ceramic combustion chamber, or replace it if necessary.

After these maintenance procedures, the technician performs the diagnostic tests described previously to evaluate improvement made by the maintenance procedures and to determine if fine-tuning is required.

#### **UPGRADING TO FLAME-RETENTION BURNERS**



heat exchanger

Oil spray pattern and combustion chamber: Matching the burner's spray pattern to the combustion chamber is important to retrofit applications.

A flame-retention burner is a newer type of oil burner that gives a higher combustion efficiency by swirling the mist or oil and air to produce better mixing. Flame-retention burners, which have been available for more than 20 years, waste less heat and have steady-state efficiency (SSE) of 80% or slightly more. Replacing an old-style burner with a flame-retention model may be cost-effective if the existing SSE is less than 75%. Flame-retention-burner motors run at

3450 rpm and older oil burners run at 1725 rpm motor speed. Looking for the nameplate motor speed can help you discriminate between the flame-retention burners and their older cousins.

If a furnace or boiler has a sound heat exchanger but the oil burner is inefficient or unserviceable, the burner may be replaced by a newer flame-retention burner. The new burner must be tested for efficient and safe operation as described previously.

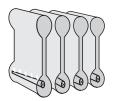
- Size the burner and nozzle to match the building's heat load, making adjustments for new insulation and air sealing done during weatherization. (With steam heating, size the burner to existing radiation surface area.)
- Install new combustion chamber, choosing one that fits the size and shape of the burner flame. Or, change nozzles on the new burner to produce a flame that fits an existing combustion chamber that is still in good condition. Either way, the flame must fill the combustion

chamber without impinging to the point where soot is formed.

#### **6.5** Inspecting furnace heat exchangers

Leaks in heat exchangers are a common problem, causing the flue gases to mix with house air. Ask clients about respiratory problems, flue-like symptoms, and smells in the house when the heat is on. Also, check around supply registers for signs of soot, especially with oil heating. All furnace heat exchangers should be inspected as part of weatherization. Consider using one or more of the following six general options for evaluating heat exchangers.

- Look for rust at furnace exhaust and vent connector.
- Look for flame-damaged areas near the burner flame. Look for flame impingement on the heat exchanger during firing.



**Furnace heat exchangers:** Although no heat exchanger is completely airtight, it should not leak enough to display the warning signs described here.

- 3. Observe flame movement, change in chimney draft, or change in CO reading as blower is turned on and off.
- 4. Measure the flue-gas oxygen concentration before the blower starts and just after it has started. There should be no more than a 1% change in the oxygen concentration.
- 5. Examine the heat exchanger, shining a bright light on one side and looking for light traces on the other using a mirror or inspection scope to peer into tight locations.

6. Employ chemical detection techniques, following manufacturer's instructions.

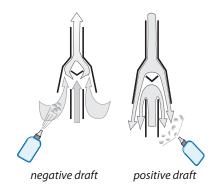
Heat exchangers with large leaks should always be replaced.

# CHAPTER 7: DRAFT, VENTING, AND COMBUSTION AIR

Draft, venting, and combustion air are related to the flow of air and gases through the burners, heat exchanger, and chimney of a combustion heating system. The main purpose of measuring draft is to insure that the combustion gases are being vented out of a home. Draft is also an indicator of the effectiveness of the venting system and the stability of the combustion process. Draft is measured in inches of water column (IWC) or pascals.

Venting is a general term for the chimney or other piping that exhausts combustion gases out of the home. If the venting is faulty, draft may be inadequate and combustion gases may backdraft into the home. Depressurization from exhaust fans or a furnace blower often interfere with venting and cause backdrafting.

Combustion air provides oxygen necessary for combustion. Most of the time combustion air is taken from indoors and



Negative versus positive draft: With positive draft air flows down the chimney and out the draft diverter. A smoke bottle helps distinguish between positive and negative draft in atmospheric chimneys.

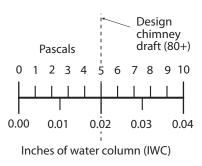
replenished from leaks in the building shell. Sometimes a home or the combustion appliance zone (CAZ) is too airtight to supply adequate combustion air and additional combustion air must be supplied through a dedicated pipe from the outdoors.

#### 7.1 MEASURING DRAFT

Most existing combustion appliances exhaust their gases into an atmospheric chimney. An atmospheric chimney produces nega-

tive draft—a slight vacuum. The strength of this draft is determined by the chimney's height, its cross-sectional area, and the temperature difference between the flue gases and outdoor air. Atmospheric chimney draft should always be negative.

Atmospheric chimneys transport combustion gases using the flame's heat and gases' buoyancy. Atmospheric gas appliances are designed to operate at a chimney draft of around negative 0.02 inches of water column (IWC) or -5 pascals. Tall chimneys located indoors typi-



cally produce stronger drafts, and short chimneys or outdoor chimneys produce weaker drafts. Wind and house pressures have a strong influence on draft in atmospheric chimneys.

Fan-assisted appliances employ a small fan near the exhaust of their heat exchanger. This draft-inducing fan regulates the overfire draft but has little or no effect on draft in their atmospheric chimneys.

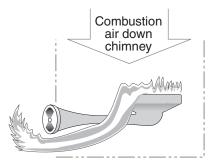
Positive-draft appliances, like condensing furnaces, have a strong positive draft and an airtight venting system. The positive draft of these appliances is created by a draft fan and is strong enough to resist the influence of most indoor and outdoor pressures.

### **COMBUSTION APPLIANCE ZONE (CAZ) TEST**

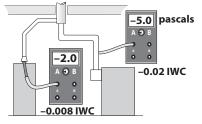
Depressurization is the leading cause of backdrafting and flame roll-out. This test uses the home's exhaust fans, air handler, and chimneys to create worst-case depressurization in the combustionappliance zone (CAZ).

A combustion appliance zone is any space where a vented combustion appliance is located.

The CAZ must be measured for worst-case depressurization. The worst-case depressurization test is configured by determining the largest combustion appliance zone depressurization due to the combined effects of door position, exhaust appliance operation, and air handler (generally the furnace blower) fan operation. A base pressure must be measured with all fans off and doors open. The worst-case depressurization is the pressure difference between worst-case and the base pressure.



Flame roll-out: Flame roll-out, a serious fire hazard, can occur when the chimney is blocked, the combustion zone is depressurized, or during very cold weather.

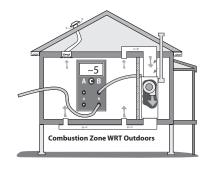


Worst-case draft testing: Measure draft for atmospheric gas appliances at worst-case conditions to ensure proper venting. Draft is measured on the chimney side of the draft diverter.

#### **Test procedure**

A recommended protocol for completing all of the combustion safety tests for vented appliances follows. This step-by-step procedure is recommended to guide technicians through a complete combustion safety analysis safely and efficiently:

- a. **Measure the base pressure.** Start with all exterior doors and windows closed and the fireplace damper closed. Set all combustion appliances to the pilot setting or turn off the service disconnect. Combustion appliances include boiler, furnace, space heaters, and water heater. With the home in this configuration, measure and record the baseline pressure of the mechanical room WRT outside.
- b. Establish the Worst Case. Turn on the dryer and all exhaust fans. Close all interior doors that do not pull air from the mechanical room. Turn on the air handler, if possible, and if the pressure in the CAZ becomes more negative, then recheck the door positions. Measure the net change in pressure from the mechanical room to outside, correcting for the base pressure. Record the "worst case depressurization" and com-



Worst-case depressurization: Worst-case testing is used to identify problems that weaken draft and restrict combustion air. The testing described here is intended to isolate the negative-pressure source.

pare to the CAZ Depressurization Limit table.

- c. Measure Worst Case Spillage, Draft, CO. Fire the appliance with the smallest Btu capacity first, test for spillage at the draft diverter with a flame or smoke test, and test for CO before the draft diverter at 5 minutes of burner operation. If spillage occurs under the worst-case condition go on to the step d) below. If no spillage is found, test the draft in the connector 2' after the diverter or first elbow and fire all other connected appliances simultaneously and test the draft diverter of each appliance for spillage. Test for CO in all appliances before the draft diverter.
- d. **Measure Spillage, Draft, CO under Natural Conditions.** If spillage is found in the first draft hood at worst case, turn off

the exhaust fans and open the interior doors with the first appliance operating and test again for CO, spillage, and draft under "natural conditions". Measure the net change from worst case to natural in pressure from the CAZ to outside to confirm the "worst case depressurization" taken in step b). Repeat the process for each appliance, allowing the vent to cool between tests.

**Note:** Vent pressure should be measured at steady-state operating conditions (generally after 5 minutes of run time and distribution fan operating when applicable) for all natural draft heating and hot water appliances. Draft test location should be approximately 1-2 feet downstream of the appliance draft diverter. The test hole must be sealed with an appropriate plug after the test. Acceptable draft test results are in the table below:

Table 7-1: Acceptable Draft Test Ranges

Outside Temperature (degrees F)	Draft Pressure Standard (Pa)
<10	-2.5
10-90	- 2.75 (T_out / 40)
>90	-0.5

**Note:** Most appliances will spill upon startup with a cold chimney. Document the amount of time it takes for spillage to stop and a draft to be a established. Any appliance that continues to spill flue gases beyond the time limits established in the table below has failed the spillage test.

When a chimney is shared by multiple appliances, the appliance with the smallest Btu input rating should be tested first and remaining appliances tested in order of increasing input rate. Induced draft heating systems should be checked for spillage at the base of the chimney liner or flue. If a chimney is shared between an induced draft heating system and a natural draft

water heater, spillage should be checked at the water heater draft diverter.

Table 7-2: Acceptable Appliance Spillage Periods

Appliance Type	Spillage Test Period (minutes)
Water Heater, Gravity Furnace, Boiler	1.0
Space Heater	1.0
Forced Air Furnace	1.0

e. **Ambient CO.** Monitor the ambient CO in the breathing zone during the test procedure and abort the test if ambient CO goes over 35 ppm. Turn off the appliance, ventilate the space, and evacuate the building. The building may be reentered once ambient CO levels have gone below 35 ppm. The appliance must be repaired and the problem corrected prior to completing the combustion safety diagnostics. If the ambient levels exceed 35 ppm during testing under natural conditions, disable the appliance and instruct the homeowner to have the appliance repaired before operating it again or include the repair in workscope if weatherization services are provided.

f. **Action Levels.** Make recommendations or complete work order for repairs based on test results and the Combustion Safety Test Action Level Tables, below.

Table 7-3: Combustion Safety Test Action Levels

CO Test Results*	And/ Or	Spillage & Draft Test Results	Retrofit Action		
0-50 ppm	And	Passes	Proceed with work		
50-99 ppm	And	Passes	Clean & tune the system/appli- ance and otherwise eliminate the CO production		
50-99 ppm	Or	Fails at worst case only	Call for clean & tune and necessary repairs on the system/appliance and/or make repairs to the home to correct the problem		
100-400 ppm	Fails under Or natural conditions		Work may not proceed until the system is serviced and the problem is corrected		
> 400 ppm	And	Fails under any con- dition	Shut off fuel to the appliance and make arrangements to service the appliance immediately		
* CO measurements for undiluted flue gases					

When CAZ depressurization limits are exceeded under worst-case conditions according to the CAZ Depressurization Limit table, make up air must be provided or other modifications to the building shell or exhaust appliances must be included in the work scope to bring the depressurization within acceptable lim-

its. Worst-case CAZ depressurization limits are shown in the table below:

Table 7-4: CAZ Depressurization Limits

Venting Condition	Limit (Pascals)
Orphan natural draft water heater (including outside chimneys)	-2
Natural draft boiler or furnace commonly vented with water heater	-3
Natural draft boiler or furnace with vent damper commonly vented with water heater	-5
Individual natural draft boiler or furnace	-5
Induced draft boiler or furnace commonly vented with water heater	-5
Power vented or induced draft boiler or furnace alone	-15
Exhaust to chimney-top draft inducer; high static pressure flame retention head oil burner; direct vented appliances; sealed combustion appliances	-50

Table 7-5: Draft Problems and Solutions

Possible Solutions
Remove chimney blockage, seal chimney air leaks, or provide additional combustion air as necessary.
Seal leaks in the furnace and in nearby return ducts. Isolate the furnace from nearby return registers.
Provide make-up or combustion air if opening a door or window to outdoors strengthens draft during testing.
Add return ducts, grills between rooms, or jumper ducts.

#### **IMPROVING INADEQUATE DRAFT**

If measured draft is below minimum draft pressures, investigate the reason for the weak draft. Open a window or door to observe whether the addition of combustion air will improve draft. If this added air strengthens draft, the problem usually is depressurization. If opening a window has no effect, inspect the chimney. The chimney could be blocked or excessively leaky.

#### Chimney improvements to solve draft problems

- Remove chimney obstructions.
- Repair disconnections or leaks at joints and where the vent connector joins a masonry chimney.
- ✓ Measure the size of the vent connector and chimney and compare to vent-sizing information listed in Section 504 of the *International Fuel Gas Code*. A vent connector or chimney liner that is either too large or too small can result in poor draft.

- ✓ If wind is causing erratic draft, consider installing a wind-dampening chimney cap.
- ✓ If the masonry chimney is deteriorated, consider installing a new chimney liner. *See page 191*.
- Increase the pitch of horizontal sections of vent.

#### **Duct improvements to solve draft problems**

- ✔ Repair all return-duct leaks near furnace.
- ✓ Isolate furnace from return registers by air-sealing.
- ✓ Improve balance between supply and return air by installing new return ducts, transfer grills, or jumper ducts. See page 249.

#### Reducing depressurization from exhaust devices

- ✓ Isolate furnace from exhaust fans and clothes dryers by air-sealing between the CAZ and zones containing these exhaust devices.
- Reduce capacity of large exhaust fans.

#### Combustion and make-up air

✔ Provide make-up air for dryers and exhaust fans and/or provide combustion-air inlet(s) to combustion zone. See page 201.

#### 7.2 VENTING COMBUSTION GASES

Proper venting is essential to the operation, efficiency, safety, and durability of combustion appliances. The National Fire Protection Association (NFPA) and the International Code Council (ICC) are the authoritative information sources on material-choice, sizing, and clearances for chimneys and vent connectors. The information in this venting section is based on the following NFPA and ICC documents.

- The International Fuel Gas Code (IFGC) (ICC)
- NFPA 31: Standard for the Installation of Oil-Burning Equipment
- NFPA 211: Standard for Chimneys, Fireplaces, Vents, and Solid-Fuel-Burning Appliances
- The International Mechanical Code (IMC) 2000 edition
- The International Residential Code (IRC) 2000 edition

Table 7-6: Guide to Venting Standards

Торіс	Standard and Section
Vent Sizing	IFGC, Section 504
Clearances	IFGC, Section 308 and Tables 308.2I NFPA 31, Section 4-4.1.1 and Tables 4-4.1.1 and 4-4.1.2 NFPA 211, Sections 6.5, 4.3, 5
Combustion Air	IFGC, Section 304 IMC, Chapter 7 IRC, Chapter 17 NFPA 31, Section 1-9; NFPA 211, Section 8.5 and 9.3

#### **GENERAL VENTING REQUIREMENTS**

Combustion gases are vented through vertical chimneys or other types of approved horizontal or vertical vent piping. Identifying the type of existing venting material, verifying the correct size of vent piping, and making sure the venting conforms to the applicable codes are important tasks in inspecting and repairing venting systems. Too large a vent often leads to condensation and corrosion. Too small a vent can result in spillage. The wrong vent materials can corrode or deteriorate from heat.

#### **VENT CONNECTORS**

A vent connector connects the appliance's venting outlet with the chimney. Approved vent connectors for gas- and oil-fired units are made from the following materials.

- 1. Type-B vent, consisting of a galvanized-steel outer pipe and aluminum inner pipe
- 2. Type-L vent connector with a stainless-steel inner pipe and either galvanized or black-steel outer pipe.
- 3. Galvanized-steel pipe ( $\geq 0.019$  inch thick or 20 gauge) for vent connectors 5 inches in diameter or less.
- 4. Galvanized-steel pipe (≥ 0.023 inch thick or 22 gauge) for vent connectors 6-to-10 inches in diameter.

Double-wall vent connectors are the best option, especially for appliances with some horizontal vent piping. A double-wall vent connector helps maintain flue-gas temperature and prevent condensation. Gas appliances with draft hoods, installed in attics or crawl spaces must use a Type-B vent connector. Type-L vent pipe is commonly used for vent connectors for oil and solid fuels but can also be used for gas.

Observe the following general specifications, concerning vent connectors.

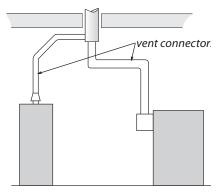
- A vent connector is almost always the same size as the vent collar on the appliance it vents.
- Single-wall vent-pipe sections should be fastened together with 3 screws or rivets.
- The vent connector should be sealed tightly where it enters a masonry chimney.
- Vent connectors should be free of rust, corrosion and holes.
- The chimney combining two vent connectors should have a cross-sectional area equal to the area of the larger

vent connector plus half the area of the smaller vent connector. This common vent should be no larger than 7 times the area of the smallest vent. For specific vent sizes, see NFPA codes themselves listed on *page 185*.

Table 7-7: Areas of Round Vents

Vent diameter	4"	5"	6"	7"	8"
Vent area (square inches)	12.6	19.6	28.3	38.5	50.2

- The horizontal length of vent connectors shouldn't be more than 75% of the chimney's vertical height or have more than 18 inches horizontal run per inch of vent diameter.
- Vent connectors must have upward slope to their connection with the chimney. A slope of at least <sup>1</sup>/<sub>4</sub> inch of



Two vent connectors joining chimney: The water heater's vent connector enters the chimney above the furnace because the water heater has a smaller input.

rise per foot of horizontal run along their entire length is recommended to cause combustion gases to rise through the vent and to prevent condensation from pooling and rusting the vent.

Table 7-8: Vent Connector Diam. vs. Max. Horiz. Length

Diame- ter (in)	3"	4"	5"	6"	7"	8"	9"	10"	12"	14"
Length (ft)	4.5'	6'	7.5'	9'	10.5'	12'	13.5'	15'	18'	21'

From International Fuel Gas Code 2000

- When two vent connectors connect to a single chimney, the vent connector servicing the smaller appliance should enter the chimney above the vent for the larger appliance.
- Clearances for common vent connectors are listed in the following table.

Table 7-9: Clearances to Combustibles for Vent Connectors

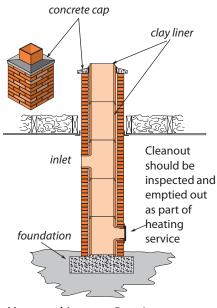
Vent Connector Type	Clearance
Single-wall galvanized steel vent pipe	6" (gas) 18" (oil)
Type-B double-wall vent pipe (gas)	1" (gas)
Type L double wall vent pipe (stainless steel inner liner, stove pipe or galvanized outer liner)	9", or 1 vent diame- ter, or as listed

#### **CHIMNEYS**

There are two common types of vertical chimneys for venting combustion fuels that satisfy NFPA and ICC codes. First there are masonry chimneys lined with fire-clay tile, and second there are manufactured metal chimneys, including all-fuel metal chimneys and Type-B vent chimneys for gas appliances.

#### **Masonry chimneys**

Observe the following general specifications for



**Masonry chimneys:** Remain a very common vent for all fuels.

building, inspecting, and repairing masonry chimneys.

- Masonry chimneys should be supported by their own masonry foundation.
- Existing masonry chimneys should be lined with a fireclay flue liner. There should be a <sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>-inch to 1-inch air gap between the clay liner and the chimney's masonry to insulate the liner. The liner shouldn't be bonded structurally to the outer masonry because it needs to expand and contract independently of the chimney's masonry structure. The clay liner can be sealed to the chimney cap with a flexible high-temperature sealant.
- The chimney's penetrations through floors and ceilings should be sealed with metal and high-temperature sealant as a firestop and air barrier.
- Deteriorated or unlined masonry chimneys should be rebuilt as specified above or relined as part of a heatingsystem replacement or a venting-safety upgrade. As an alternative, the vertical chimney may be replaced by a sidewall vent, equipped with a power venter mounted on the exterior wall.

Table 7-10: Clearances to Combustibles for Common Chimneys

Chimney Type	Clearance
Interior chimney masonry w/ fireclay liner	2"
Exterior masonry chimney w/ fireclay liner	1"
All-fuel metal vent: insulated double wall or triplewall pipe	2"
Type B double-wall vent (gas only)	1"
Manufactured chimneys/vents usually list their clearance	

 Masonry chimneys should have a cleanout 12 inches or more below the lowest inlet. Mortar and brick dust should be cleaned out of the bottom of the chimney through the clean-out door, so that this debris won't eventually interfere with venting.

#### **Manufactured chimneys**

Manufactured metal chimneys have engineered parts that fit together in a prescribed way. Metal chimneys contain manufactured components from the vent connector to the termination fitting on the roof. Parts include: metal pipe, weight-supporting hardware, insulation shields, roof jacks, and chimney caps. One manufacturer's chimney may not be compatible with another's connecting fittings.

All-fuel metal chimneys come in two types: insulated double wall metal pipe and triple-wall metal pipe. Install them strictly observing the manufacturer's specifications.

Type-B vent pipe is permitted as a chimney for gas appliances. Some older manufactured gas chimneys were made of metal-reinforced asbestos cement.



chimney: These chimney systems include transition fittings, support brackets, roof jacks, and chimney caps. The pipe is doublewall insulated or triple wall.

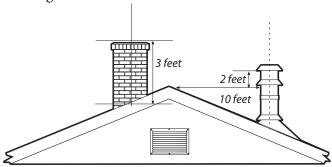
All-fuel metal



#### **Chimney termination**

Masonry chimneys and all-fuel metal chimneys should terminate at least three feet above the roof penetration and two feet above any obstacle within ten feet of the chimney outlet. Chim-

neys should have a cap to prevent rain and strong downdrafts from entering.



**Chimney terminations:** Should have vent caps and be given adequate clearance height from nearby building parts. These requirements are for masonry chimneys and manufactured all-fuel chimneys.

B-vent chimneys can terminate as close as one foot above flat roofs and pitched roofs up to a  $^6/_{12}$  roof pitch. As the pitch rises, the minimum termination height rises as shown in the table.

Table 7-11: Roof Slope and B-Vent Chimney Height (ft.)

1'	1' 3"	1' 6"	2'	2' 6"	3' 3"	4'	5′	6'	7'
6/12	7/12	8/12	9/12	10/12	11/12	12/12	14/12	16/12	18/12
flat-	6/12-	7/12-	8/12-	9/12-	10/12-	11/12-	12/12-	14/12-	16/12-

From International Fuel Gas Code 2000

#### Metal liners for masonry chimneys

Unlined masonry chimneys or chimneys with deteriorated liners should be relined as part of heating system replacement. Use either Type-B vent, a flexible or rigid stainless-steel liner, or a flexible aluminum liner. *See page 197*.

Flexible liners require careful installation to avoid a low spot at the bottom, where the liner turns a right angle to pass through the wall of the chimney. Follow the manufacturer's instructions, which usually prescribe stretching the liner and fastening it securely at both ends, to prevent it from sagging and thereby creating such a low spot.

Flexible liners are easily damaged by falling masonry debris inside a deteriorating chimney. Use B-vent instead termination fitting

flexible liner

mortar sleeve

single-wall collar

Flexible metal chimney liners: The most important installation issues are sizing the liner correctly along with fastening and supporting the ends to prevent sagging.

of a flexible liner when the chimney is significantly deteriorated.

To minimize condensation, flexible liners should be insulated—especially when installed in exterior chimneys. Consider insulating flexible metal chimney liners with vermiculite or a fiberglass-insulation jacket, if the manufacturer's instructions allow.

Sizing flexible chimney liners correctly is very important. Oversizing is common and can lead to condensation and corrosion. The manufacturers of the liners include vent-sizing tables in their instructions. Liners should bear the label of a testing lab like Underwriters Laboratories (UL).

#### SPECIAL VENTING CONSIDERATIONS FOR GAS

The American Gas Association (AGA) has devised a classification system for venting systems serving natural gas and propane appliances. This classification system assigns Roman numerals to four categories of venting based on whether there is positive or negative pressure in the vent and whether condensation is likely to occur in the vent.

A great majority of appliances found in homes and multifamily buildings are Category I, which have negative pressure in vertical chimneys with no condensation expected in the vent

	Negative- pressure Venting	Positive- pressure
Non-condensing	Combustion Efficiency 83% or less Use standard venting: masonry or Type B vent	Combustion Efficiency 83% or less Use only pressurizable vent as specified by manufacturer
Condensing	Combustion Efficiency over 83% Use only special condensing-service vent as specified by manufacturer	Combustion Efficiency over 83% Use only pressurizable condensing-service vent as specified by manufacturer
Ame	rican Gas Associatio	on Vent Categories

**AGA venting categories:** The AGA classifies venting by whether there is positive or negative pressure in the vent and whether condensation is likely.

connector or chimney. Condensing furnaces are usually Category IV with positive pressure in their vent and condensation occurring in both the appliance and vent. Category III vents are rare but some fan-assisted appliances are vented with airtight non-condensing vents.

#### Venting fan-assisted furnaces and boilers

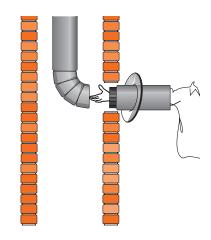
Newer gas-fired fan-assisted central heaters control flue-gas flow and excess air better than atmospheric heaters, resulting in their higher efficiency. These are non-condensing Category I furnaces in the 80%-plus Annual Fuel Utilization Efficiency (AFUE) range. Because these units eliminate dilution air and have slightly cooler flue gases, existing chimneys should be carefully inspected to ensure that they are ready for a possibly more corrosive flue-gas flow. The chimney should be relined when any of the following three conditions are present.

1. When the existing masonry chimney is unlined.

- 2. When the old clay or metal chimney liner is deteriorated.
- 3. When the new heater has a smaller input than the old one. In this case the liner should be sized to the new furnace or boiler and the existing water heater.

For gas-fired 80+ AFUE furnaces, a chimney liner should consist of:

- Type-B vent
- A rigid or flexible stainless steel liner
- A poured masonry liner



**B-vent chimney liner:** Double-wall Type-B vent is the most commonly available chimney liner and is recommended over flexible liners. Rigid stainless-steel single-wall liners are also a permanent solution to deteriorated chimneys.

• An insulated flexible aluminum liner

Because of the considerable expense that chimney relining can entail, sidewall venting with a power venter should be considered when an existing chimney is inadequate for new appliances.

Table 7-12: Characteristics of Gas Furnaces and Boilers

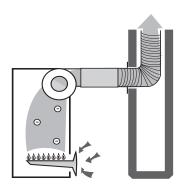
Steady-state efficiency	Operating characteristics
70+	Category I, draft diverter, no draft fan, standing pilot, non-condensing, indoor combustion and dilution air.
80+	Category I, no draft diverter, draft fan, electronic ignition, indoor combustion air, no dilution air.
90+	Category IV, no draft diverter, draft fan, low-tem- perature plastic venting, positive draft, electronic ignition, condensing heat exchanger, outdoor combustion air is strongly recommended.

#### Pressurized sidewall vents

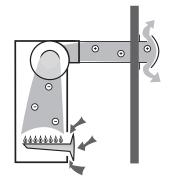
Sometimes, the manufacturer gives the installer a venting choice of whether to install a fan-assisted furnace or boiler into a vertical chimney (Category I) or as a positive-draft appliance (Category III), vented through a sidewall vent. Sidewall-vented fan-assisted furnaces and boilers may vent through B-vent, stainless-steel single-wall vent pipe, or high-temperature plastic pipe. Pressurized sidewall vents should be virtually airtight at the operating draft. B-vent must be sealed with high-temperature silicone caulking or other approved means to air-seal its joints.

Some high-temperature positive-draft plastic vent pipe, used in horizontal installations, was recalled by manufacturers because of deterioration from heat and condensation. Deteriorated high-temperature plastic vent should be replaced by airtight stainless-steel vent piping or else B-vent, sealed at joints with high-temperature sealant.

Existing fan-assisted appliances may have problems with weak draft and condensation when vented horizontally. Horizontally vented, fan-assisted furnaces and boilers may require a retrofit power venter to create adequate draft in some cases.



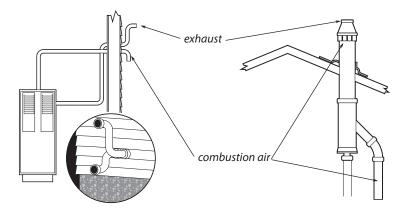
Fan-assisted gas heaters with vertical chimneys: These 80% AFUE central heaters are almost always vented into atmospheric chimneys, which may need to be relined.



Fan-assisted heaters with sidewall vents: Sometimes these appliances are vented through a side wall through airtight plastic or stainless-steel vent pipe.

#### **Condensing-furnace venting**

Condensing furnaces with 90+ AFUE are vented horizontally or vertically through PVC Schedule 40 pipe. The vent is pressurized and plenty of condensation occurs, making it Category IV. Vent piping should be sloped back toward the appliance, so the condensate can be drained and treated if necessary.



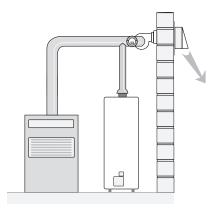
**Condensing furnace venting:** The two common types of termination for plastic condensing vents are separate pipes and a combined fitting. Vents going through the roof are preferred for their being more resistant to tampering and damage.

Combustion air is supplied from outdoors through a sealed plastic pipe or from indoors. Outdoor combustion air is highly recommended, and most condensing furnaces are equipped for outdoor combustion air through a dedicated pipe. This combined combustion-air and venting system is referred to as direct-vent or sealed-combustion.

#### POWER VENTERS FOR SIDEWALL VENTING

Power venters are installed just inside or outside an exterior wall and are used for sidewall venting. Power venters create a stable negative draft.

Many power venters allow precise control of draft through air controls on the their fans. Barometric draft controls can also provide good draft control when installed either on the common vent for twoappliances or on the vent connector for each appliance. This more precise draft control, provided by the power venter and/or barometric damper, minimizes excess combustion and dilution air. Flue gas temperatures for power venters can be cooler than tempera-



**Power venters:** Sidewall venting with a power venter is an excellent option when the chimney is dilapidated or when no chimney exists.

tures needed to power vertical atmospheric chimneys. Less excess air and cooler flue gases can improve combustion efficiency in many cases, compared to the non-adjustable draft of a vertical chimney. However, the power venter must be installed by a technician familiar with adjusting the draft to each appliance to achieve the efficiency benefit.

A single power venter can vent both a furnace or boiler and also a water heater. Types B or L vent are good choices for horizontal vent piping. Use Type B for gas only.

Power venters should be considered as a venting option when:

- Wind, internal house pressures, or nearby buildings have created a stubborn drafting problem that other options can't solve.
- An existing horizontally vented appliance has weak draft and/or condensation problems.
- Clients who currently heat with electricity want to convert to gas space heating and water heating but have no chimney.

- The cost of lining an unlined or deteriorated chimney exceeds the cost of installing a power venter with its horizontal vent.
- A floor furnace or other appliance with a long horizontal vent connector has backdrafting problems.
- A water heater is orphaned in a too-large vertical chimney when the new furnace or boiler is vented through a plastic venting system.
- High draft in the existing vertical chimney is creating unstable combustion or low steady-state efficiency in the appliances connected to it.

#### 7.3 WOOD-HEATING VENTING AND SAFETY

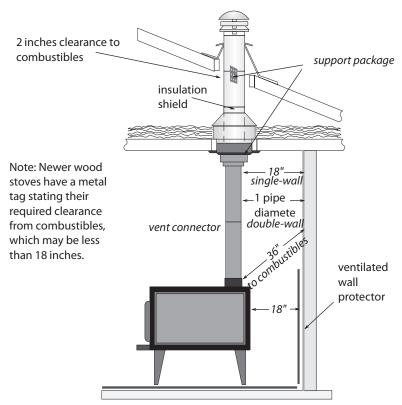
Wood heating is a popular and effective auxiliary heating source for homes. However, wood stoves and fireplaces can cause indoor-air-pollution and fire hazards. It's important to inspect wood stoves to assess potential hazards.

Stoves that are listed by a testing agency like Underwriters Laboratory have a tag stating their clearance from combustibles. Unlisted stoves should conform to the minimum clearances shown here. Ventilated wall protectors, described in NFPA codes and standards, generally allow the listed clearance to be reduced by half. *See page 184*.

All components of wood-stove venting systems should be approved for use with wood stoves. Chimney sections penetrating floor, ceiling, or roof should have approved thimbles, support packages, and ventilated shields to protect combustible materials from high temperatures.

✓ Inspect stove, vent connector, and chimney for correct clearances from combustible materials as listed in NFPA 211. Ensure that stove is sitting on a noncombustible floor.

- ✓ Inspect vent connector and chimney for leaks, and seal leaks with a high-temperature sealant designed for use with metal or masonry.
- ✓ Inspect chimney and vent connector for creosote buildup, and clean chimney if creosote build-up exists.
- ✓ Inspect the house for soot on seldom-cleaned horizontal surfaces. If soot is present or if the blower door indicates leakage, inspect and replace the gasket on the wood-stove door if appropriate. Seal other air leaks, and take steps to improve draft as necessary, in order to reduce indoor smoke emissions.
- ✓ Inspect and clean stack damper and/or combustion air intake if necessary.
- Check catalytic combustor for repair or replacement if the wood stove has one.
- Assure that heat exchange surfaces and flue passages within the wood stove are free of accumulations of soot or debris.



**Wood-stove installation:** Wood-stove venting and clearances are vitally important to wood-burning safety. Read and follow all manufacturer's instructions for the stove and its venting components.

#### 7.4 COMBUSTION AIR

Combustion air enters the combustion appliance zone (CAZ) through unintentional or intentional openings in the building shell or through a dedicated pipe from outdoors. The need to install an outdoor combustion air source is a common decision in residential HVAC installation and service work. Use worst-case draft testing to help determine whether or not to improve combustion air. *See page 177*.

The goals of assessing combustion air through draft testing are the following.

- To discover whether or not there is an adequate supply of combustion air.
- To ensure that a combustion-air problem isn't creating CO, weakening draft, or interfering with combustion.
- To avoid unnecessary work or creating a problem by installing combustion air openings. Combustion air openings can depressurize the CAZ in some cases, especially when the openings are above the furnace or boiler.

A combustion-air source must deliver between 17 cfm and 600 cfm, depending on the size of the combustion appliances.

Table 7-13: CFM Requirements for Combustion Furnaces or Boilers

Appliance	Combustion Air (cfm)	Dilution Air (cfm)
Conventional Oil	38	195
Flame-Retention Oil	25	195
High-Efficiency Oil	22	_
Conventional Atmospheric Gas	30	143
Fan-Assisted Gas	26	_
Condensing Gas	17	_
Fireplace (no doors)	100-600	_
Airtight Wood Stove	10–50	_

A.C.S. Hayden, Residential Combustion Appliances: Venting and Indoor Air Quality Solid Fuels Encyclopedia

A combustion appliance zone (CAZ) is classified as either an un-confined space or confined space. An un-confined space is a CAZ connected to enough building air leakage to provide combustion air. A confined space is a CAZ with sheeted walls and ceiling and a closed door that form an air barrier between the appliance and other indoor spaces. For confined spaces, the

IFGC prescribes additional combustion air from outside the CAZ. Combustion air is supplied to the combustion appliance in four ways.

- 1. To an un-confined space through leaks in the building.
- 2. To a confined space through an intentional opening or openings between the CAZ and other indoor areas where air leaks replenish combustion air.
- 3. To a confined space through an intentional opening or openings between the CAZ and outdoors or ventilated intermediate zones like attics and crawl spaces.
- Directly from the outdoors to the combustion appliance through a duct. Appliances with direct combustion-air ducts are called sealed-combustion or direct-vent appliances.

#### **UN-CONFINED-SPACE COMBUSTION AIR**

Combustion appliances located in most basements, attics, and crawl spaces get adequate combustion air from leaks in the building shell. Even when a combustion appliance is located within the home's living space, it usually gets adequate combustion air from air leaks unless the house is airtight or the combustion zone is depressurized. See page 177.

#### **CONFINED-SPACE COMBUSTION AIR**

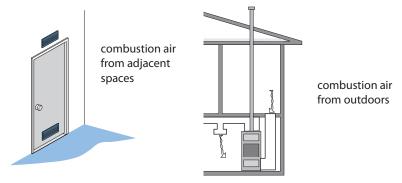
A confined space is defined by the IFGC as a room containing one or more combustion appliances that has less than 50 cubic feet of volume for every 1000 Btu per hour of appliance input.

However, if a small mechanical room is connected to adjacent spaces through large air passages like floor-joist spaces, the CAZ may not need additional combustion air despite sheeted walls and a door separating it from other indoor spaces. The extent of the connection between the CAZ and other spaces can be con-

firmed by worst-case draft testing or blower-door pressure testing.

On the other hand, if the home is unusually airtight, the CAZ may be unable to provide adequate combustion air, even when the combustion zone is larger than the minimum confined-space room volume, defined above.

Combustion air from adjacent indoor spaces is usually preferred over outdoor combustion air because of the possibility of wind depressurizing the combustion zone. However, if there is a sheltered outdoor space from which to draw combustion air, outdoor combustion air may be a superior choice. Outdoor air is generally cleaner and dryer than indoor air, and a connection to the outdoors makes the confined space less affected by indoor pressure fluctuations.



Passive combustion-air options: Combustion air can be supplied from adjacent indoor spaces or from outdoors. Beware of passive combustion-air vents into the attic that could depressurize the combustion zone or allow moisture to travel into the attic.

In confined spaces or airtight homes where outdoor combustion air is needed, prefer a single vent openings installed as low in the CAZ as practical. A combustion-air vent into an attic may depressurize the combustion zone or dump warm moist air into the attic. Instead, connect the combustion zone to a ventilated crawl space or directly to outdoors through a single low vent if possible.

Choose an outdoor location that is sheltered, where the wall containing the vent isn't parallel to prevailing winds. Wind blowing parallel to an exterior wall or at a right angle to the vent opening tends to de-pressurize both the opening and the CAZ connected to it. Indoors, locate combustion air vents away from water pipes to prevent freezing in cold climates.

Table 7-14: Combustion Air Openings: Location and Size

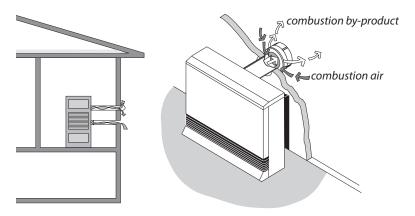
Location	Dimensions	
Two direct openings to adjacent indoor space	Minimum area each: $100 \text{ in}^2$ $1 \text{ in}^2 \text{ per } 1000 \text{ Btuh each}$ Combined room volumes must be $\geq 50$ $\text{ft}^3/1000 \text{ Btuh}$	
Two direct openings or vertical ducts to outdoor	Each vent should have 1 in <sup>2</sup> for each s 4000 Btuh	
Two horizontal ducts to outdoors	Each vent should have 1 in <sup>2</sup> for each 2000 Btuh	
Single direct or ducted vent to outdoors	Single vent should have 1 in <sup>2</sup> for each 3000 Btuh	
From the International Fuel Gas Code		

Net free area is smaller than actual vent area and takes the blocking effect of louvers into account. Metal grills and louvers provide 60% to 75% of their area as net free area while wood louvers provide only 20% to 25%. Combustion air vents should be no less than 3 inches in their smallest dimension.

Here is an example of sizing combustion air to another indoor area. The furnace and water heater are located in a confined space. The furnace has an input rating of 100,000 Btu/hour. The water heater has an input rating of 40,000 Btu/hour. Therefore, there should be  $280 \text{ in}^2$  of net free area of vent between the mechanical room and other rooms in the home. ([100,000 + 40,000]  $\div$  1,000 = 140 x 2 in<sup>2</sup> = 280 in<sup>2</sup>). Each vent should therefore have a minimum of 140 in<sup>2</sup>.

#### **Direct outdoor combustion-air supply**

Many new combustion appliances are designed for direct outdoor-air supply to the burner. These include most condensing furnaces, mobile home furnaces, mobile home water heaters, many space heaters, and some non-condensing furnaces and boilers. Some appliances give installers a choice between indoor and outdoor combustion air. Outdoor combustion air is usually preferable in order to prevent the depressurization problems, combustion-air deficiencies, and draft problems.



**Sealed combustion:** Sealed combustion appliances draw combustion air in and exhaust combustion by-products, either using a draft fan or by pressure differences created by the fire.

#### Fan-powered combustion air

At least one company manufactures a proprietary combustion-air system that introduces outdoor air through a fan that sits on the floor and attaches to a combustion-air duct to outdoors.

### Combustion air combined with power venting

Both gas- and oil-fired heating systems can be supplied with combustion air by proprietary systems that combine power



**Fan-powered combustion air:** Fans for supplying combustion air can help solve stubborn combustion air and drafting problems.

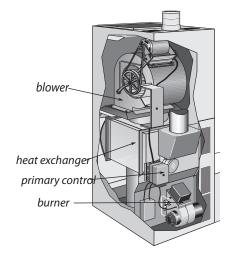
venting with powered combustion-air supply. The combustion air simply flows into the combustion zone from outdoors, powered by the power venter. If the appliance has a power burner, like a gun-type oil burner, a boot may be available to supply combustion air directly to the burner as shown here.

# CHAPTER 8: REPLACEMENT SPECS AND HYDRONIC HEATING

Don't assume that older furnaces and boilers are inefficient until testing them. During testing, make appropriate efforts to repair and adjust the existing furnace or boiler, before deciding to replace it. Replacement parts like gas valves and controls for older heating units are commonly available.

Heating appliances are often replaced when the cost of repairs and retrofits exceeds one half of estimated replacement costs. Estimate the repair and retrofit costs and compare them to replacement cost before deciding between retrofit and replacement.

New heating appliances must be installed to manufacturer's specifications, following all applicable building and fire codes. Replacement furnaces and boilers should have a minimum Annual Fuel Utilization Efficiency (AFUE) of 80%. However gas furnaces



**Oil-fired downflow furnaces:** Their design hasn't changed much in recent years except for the flame-retention burner.

and boilers with AFUEs of 90% should be given special consideration. These high-efficiency furnaces are direct-vent, sealed-combustion units with health and safety benefits in addition to their superior efficiency and significantly lower fuel usage.

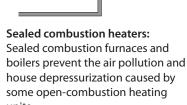
Heat load calculations, used to size the new heater, should account for reduced heating loads, resulting from insulation and air-sealing work. Heat load calculations should follow Manual J procedures.

Specifications are presented here first according to fuel-type—oil or gas—then by distribution type: forced air, hot water, or steam.

#### **8.1 FURNACE REPLACEMENT**

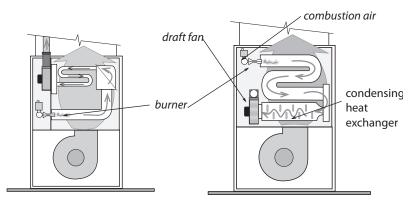
The overall goal of furnace replacement is to provide a forced-air heating system in virtually new condition, even though existing supply and return ducts may remain. Any design flaws in the ducts and registers should be diagnosed and corrected during the furnace replacement.

Observe the following standards in furnace installation.



- ✓ Furnace should be sized to units. the approximate heating load of the home, accounting for post-weatherization heat-loss reductions.
- ✓ Installer should add return ducts or supply ducts as part of furnace replacement to improve air distribution, to eliminate duct-induced house pressures, and to establish acceptable values for static pressure and heat rise.
- Supply and return plenums should be mechanically fastened with screws and sealed to air handler with mastic and fabric mesh tape to form an essentially airtight connection on all sides of these important joints.
- ✓ Measure draft and test for CO. *See pages 177 and 157*.
- ✓ All ducts should be sealed as described on *page 243*.
- ✓ Heat rise (supply temperature minus return temperature) must be within manufacturer's specifications.

✓ High limit should stop fuel flow at 250° F or less. Furnace must not cycle on high limit.



**80+ gas furnace:** An 80+ furnace has a restrictive heat exchanger, a draft fan, and has no draft diverter or standing pilot.

**90+ gas furnace:** A 90+ furnace has a condensing heat exchanger and a stronger draft fan for pulling combustion gases through its more restrictive heat exchange system and establishing a strong positive draft.

✓ Fan control should be adjusted to activate fan at 130° to 140° F and deactivate it at 95° to 105°F, using a thermometer. Slightly higher settings are acceptable if these recommended settings cause a comfort complaint.

- Static pressure, measured in both supply and return plenums should be within manufacturer's specifications.
- Blower should not be set to operate continuously.
- Seal holes through the jacket of the air handler with mastic or foil tape.
- Filters should be held firmly in place and provide complete coverage of blower intake

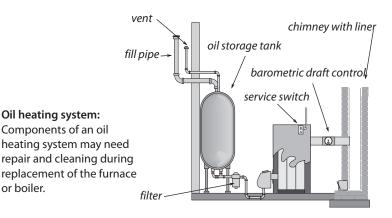
Static pressure and temperature rise: Testing static pressure and temperature rise across the new furnace should verify that the duct system isn't restricted. The correct airflow, specified by the manufacturer, is necessary for high efficiency.

or return register. Filters should be easy to replace.

#### **8.2** OIL-FIRED HEATING INSTALLATION

The overall goal of the system replacement is to provide an oil-fired heating system in virtually new condition, even though components like the oil tank, chimney, piping, or ducts may remain. Any maintenance or repair on these remaining components should be considered part of the job. Any design flaws related to the original system should be diagnosed and corrected during the heating-system replacement.

Examine existing chimney and vent connector for suitability as venting for new appliance. The vent connector may need to be re-sized and the chimney may need to be re-lined.



✓ Check clearances of heating unit and its vent connector to nearby combustibles, by referring to NFPA 31. See page 184.

Oil heating system:

or boiler.

- Check for the presence of a control that will interrupt power to the burner in the event of a fire.
- ✓ Test oil pressure to verify compliance with manufacturer's specifications.
- ✓ Test transformer voltage to verify compliance with manufacturer's specifications.
- ✓ Test control circuit amperage, and adjust thermostat heat anticipator to match.
- ✓ Adjust oxygen, flue-gas temperature, and smoke number to match manufacturer's specifications.
- Inspect oil tank and remove deposits at bottom of tank as part of new installation.
- ✓ Install new fuel filter and purge fuel lines as part of new installation.
- ✔ Bring tank and oil lines into compliance with NFPA 31. See Chapter 6 and Chapter 7.

Check for emergency shut-off, installed in the living space.

#### 8.3 Gas-fired heating installation

The overall goal of the system replacement is to provide a gasfired heating system in virtually new condition, even though existing components like the gas lines, chimney, water piping, or ducts may remain. Any necessary maintenance or repair on these remaining components should be considered part of the installation. Any design flaws in the original system should be diagnosed and corrected during the heating-system replacement. Additional information on hot-water space heating is given on *page 217*. Additional information on forced air furnaces is located on *page 233*.

The new furnace or boiler should have an Annual Fuel Utilization Efficiency (AFUE) of at least 80% and be equipped with a draft-assisting fan, electronic ignition, and no draft diverter.

- ✓ Check clearances of heating unit and its vent connector to nearby combustibles, according to the International Fuel Gas Code (IFGC). See page 185.
- ✓ Clock gas meter to insure correct gas input. See page 161.
- If necessary, measure gas pressure, and increase or decrease gas pressure to obtain proper gas input.
- ✓ Test gas water heater to insure that it vents properly after installation of a sealed-combustion, 90+ AFUE furnace. Install a chimney liner if necessary.
- ✓ Set thermostat's heat anticipator to the amperage measured in the control circuit, or follow thermostat manufacturer's instructions for adjusting cycle length.
- ✓ Follow manufacturer's venting instructions along with the IFGC to establish a proper venting system.

✓ Ensure that there is a proper sediment trap on gas line.

Table 8-1: Combustion Standards for Gas-Burning Furnaces

Gas Combustion Performance Indicator	80+ Furnace	90+ Furnace
Oxygen (% O <sub>2</sub> )	4–9%	4–9%
Stack temperature (°F)	325°-450°	90°-120°
Carbon monoxide (CO) parts per million (ppm)	≤ 100 ppm	≤ 100 ppm
Steady-state efficiency (SSE) (%)	80-82%	92-97%
Gas pressure (inches water column or IWC)	3.2–3.9 IWC	3.2–3.9 IWC
Supply temperature (°F)	120–140°	95–140°

## **8.4** ELECTRIC-FURNACES AND ELECTRIC BASEBOARD HEAT

The purpose of servicing electric furnaces and electric baseboard heat is to clean the heat exchangers and blower. Sealing ducts is also very important because electric heat is so expensive.

- ✔ Check and clean thermostat.
- Clean and lubricate blower if appropriate.
- ✔ Clean or replace all filters.
- ✓ Vacuum and clean housing around electric elements, if dirty.
- ✔ Clean fins on electric-baseboard systems, if applicable.
- ✓ Take extra care in duct sealing and duct airflow improvements for electric furnaces because of the high cost of electricity. See pages 243 and 249.
- ✓ Verify that safety limits, heat rise, and static pressure conform to manufacturer's specifications.

#### **8.5** HYDRONIC AND STEAM STANDARDS

The following standards refer to hot-water and steam systems commonly found in single-family homes. Hot-water and steam systems found in multifamily buildings are generally more complex and should be tested and evaluated by professionals experienced in their operation.

#### **BOILER EFFICIENCY AND MAINTENANCE**

Boilers can maintain good performance and efficiency for many years if they are regularly maintained and tuned-up. Boiler performance and efficiency improve after effective maintenance and tune-up procedures. There are more ways for performance and efficiency to deteriorate in boilers compared to furnaces. Specifically these are:

- Corrosion, scaling, and dirt on the water side of the heat exchanger.
- Corrosion, dust, and dirt on the fire side of the heat exchanger.
- Excess air during combustion from air leaks and incorrect fuel-air mixture.
- Off-cycle air circulation through the firebox and heat exchanger, removing heat from stored water.

Consider the following maintenance and efficiency improvements for both hot-water and steam boilers.

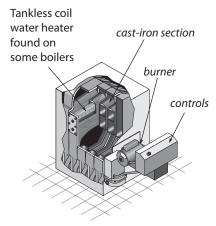
- ✓ Check for leaks on the boiler, around its fittings, or on any of the distribution piping connected to the boiler.
- ✔ Clean fire side of heat exchanger of noticeable dirt.
- Check doors and cleanout covers for air leakage.
   Replace gaskets or replace warped doors or warped cleanout covers.

✔ Drain water from the boiler drain until the water flows clean.

## **HOT-WATER SPACE-HEATING**

Hot-water heating is generally a little more efficient than forced-air heating and considerably more efficient than steam heating. The most significant energy wasters in hotwater systems are poor steady-state efficiency, off-cycle flue losses robbing heat from stored water, and boilers operating at too high a water temperature.

Consider the following safety checks and improvements.



**Cast-iron sectional boilers:** The most common boiler type for residential applications.

✓ Confirm the existence of a 30-psi-rated pressure-relief valve. Replace a malfunctioning valve or add one if none exists. Note signs of leakage or discharges, and find out why the relief valve is discharging.

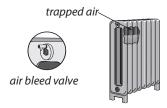
**Note:** You can recognize a hot-water boiler by its pressure tank, located somewhere above the boiler. This cylindrical tank provides an air cushion to allow the system's water to expand and contract as it is heated and cooled without discharging through the relief valve.

✓ Make sure that the pressure tank isn't waterlogged or sized too small for the system. This could cause the pressure-relief valve to discharge. Test pressure tank for its rated air pressure—often 15 psi.

- ✓ If rust is observed in venting, verify that return water temperature is above 130° F for gas and above 150° F for oil, to prevent acidic condensation.
- ✓ High-limit control should deactivate burner at 180° F
  or less.
- ✓ Lubricate circulator pump(s) if necessary.

Consider the following efficiency improvements.

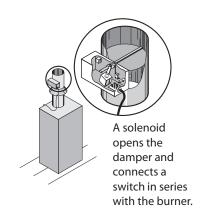
- Repair water leaks in the system.
- ✔ Boiler should not have low-limit control for maintaining a minimum boiler-water temperature, unless the boiler is heating domestic water in addition to space heating.
- ✔ Bleed air from radiators and piping through air vents on piping or radiators. Most systems have an automatic fill valve. If there is a manual fill valve for refilling system with water, it should be open to push water in and air out, during air purging.



**Purging air:** Trapped air collects at the hot-water system's highest parts. Bleeding air from radiators fills the radiator and gives it more heating surface area.

- Consider installing a twostage thermostat or timer control to increase circulator on-time compared to burner on-time.
- Consider installing outdoor reset controllers on larger boilers to regulate water temperature, depending on outdoor temperature.
- ✓ After control improvements like two-stage thermostats or reset controllers, verify that return water temperature is high enough to prevent condensation and corrosion in the chimney as noted previously.

- ✓ Vacuum and clean fins of fin-tube convectors if you notice dust and dirt there.
- ✓ Insulate all supply piping, passing through unheated areas, with foam pipe insulation, at least one-inch thick, rated for temperatures up to 200° F.
- Consider installing electric vent dampers on atmospheric gasand oil-fired high-mass boilers.



**Vent dampers:** Electric vent dampers close the chimney when the burner isn't firing, preventing circulating air from carrying the boiler's stored heat up the chimney.

## **STEAM HEATING**

Steam heating is less efficient

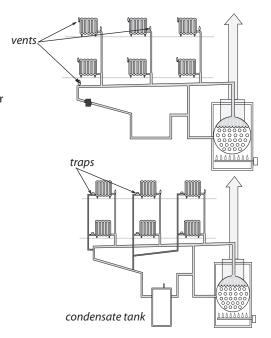
than hot-water heating because higher temperature heating systems are less efficient than lower temperature ones. A steam boiler heats water to its boiling point before making steam or accomplishing any space heating. Steam boilers are also more hazardous because of the steam pressure. For these reasons heating-system replacement with a hot-water or forced-air system should be considered, depending on the boiler's operating efficiency after a tune-up.

**Note:** You can recognize a steam boiler by its sight glass, which will indicate the boiler's water level. Notice that the water doesn't completely fill the boiler, but instead allows a space for steam to form above the boiler's water.

If the steam-heating system must remain, operate it at the lowest steam pressure that will heat the building. This may be considerably less than 1 psi on the boiler-pressure gauge. Large buildings may need higher steam pressures, but smaller ones can operate at small steam pressure. Traps and air vents are crucial to operating at a low steam pressure. Electric vent dampers will reduce off-cycle losses for both gas- and oil-fired systems.

One-pipe and two-pipe steam systems: Still common in multifamily buildings, one-pipe steam works best when very low pressure steam can drive air out of the piping and radiators quickly through plentiful vents. Vents are located on each radiator and also on main steam lines.

#### Two-pipe steam systems: Radiator traps keep steam inside radiators until it condenses. No steam should be present at the condensate tank.



Perform the following for safety and maintenance checks on steam systems.

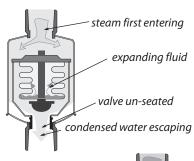
- ✓ Verify that steam boilers are equipped with high-pressure limits and low-water cut-off controls.
- Verify that flush valves on low water cutoffs are operable and do not leak.
- ✓ On steam boilers with externally mounted low water cutoffs, verify the function of the control by flushing the low water cutoff with the burner operating. Combustion must cease when the water level in the boiler drops below the level of the float.
- ✔ Drain water out of blow-down valve until water runs clear.

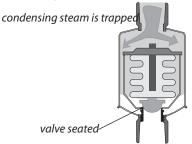
- Check with owner about chemicals added to boiler water to prevent corrosion and mineral deposits. Add chemicals if necessary.
- ✓ Ask owner about instituting a schedule of blow-down and chemical-level checks.

Consider the following efficiency checks and improvements for steam systems.

- ✓ Verify that high-pressure limit control is set at or below 1 (one) psi.
- Inspect return lines and condensate receiver for steam coming back to the boiler. Check radiator and main line traps.
- ✓ Verify steam vents are operable and that all steam radiators receive steam during every cycle. Unplug vents or replace malfunctioning vents as necessary. Add vents to steam lines and radiators as needed to achieve this goal.
- Check steam traps with a digital thermometer or listening device to detect any steam escaping from radiators through the condensate return. Replace leaking steam traps or their thermostatic elements.
- Consider installing remote sensing thermostats that vary cycle length according to outdoor temperature and include night-setback capability.

- Repair leaks on the steam supply piping or on condensate return piping.
- Consider a flame-retention burner and electric vent damper as retrofits for steam boilers.
- Clean fire side of heat exchanger of noticeable dirt.
- ✓ All steam piping, passing through unconditioned areas, should be insulated to at least R-3 with fiberglass or specially designed foam pipe insulation rated for steam piping.





**Steam traps:** Steam enters the steam trap heating its element and expanding the fluid inside. The expanded element plugs the steam's escape with a valve.

## **BOILER REPLACEMENT**

Don't assume that a boiler replacement will save much energy unless the boiler's steady-state efficiency can't be raised to around 80%. The overall goal of boiler replacement is to provide a hydronic heating system in virtually new condition, even though existing supply and return piping may remain. Any design flaws in the venting, piping, and controls should be diagnosed and corrected during the boiler replacement.

Boiler piping and controls present many options for zoning, boiler staging, and energy-saving controls. Dividing homes or multifamily buildings into zones, with separate thermostats, can significantly improve energy efficiency over operating a single zone. Modern hydronic controls can provide different water temperatures to different zones with varying heating loads.

The new boiler should have an AFUE of at least 80%. The new boiler should be equipped with electronic ignition and a draft-assisting or power-draft fan. It should not have a draft diverter.

Boiler seasonal efficiency is more sensitive to proper sizing than is furnace efficiency. A boiler should not be oversized by more than 15%.

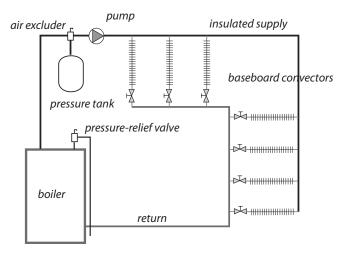
combustion air draft fan vent heat exchanger

**Wall-hung boiler:** Energy-efficient wall-hung boilers require less space than standard boilers.

Follow these specifications when replacing boilers.

- ✓ Inspect chimney for deterioration and correct sizing. Repair and re-line the chimney as necessary.
- ✓ An effective air-excluding device or devices must be part of the new hydronic system.
- ✓ Install the pump near the downstream side of the pressure tank to prevent the suction side of the pump from depressurizing the piping, which can pull air into the piping.
- ✓ The pressure tank should be replaced, unless it is verified to be the proper size for the new system and tested for correct pressure during boiler installation.
- ✓ Verify that return water temperature is above 130° F for gas and above 150° F for oil, to prevent acidic condensation within the boiler, unless the boiler is designed for condensing. Install piping bypasses, mixing valves, primary-secondary piping, or other strategies, as necessary, to prevent condensation within a non-condensing boiler.

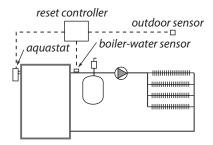
- Recognize the boiler installation's potential for causing condensation in the vent connector and chimney. If the boiler's steady-state efficiency is expected to be more than 83%, condensation-resistant venting and condensation drains should be designed into the venting system. These custom venting systems are provided or specified by the manufacturer.
- ✓ A pressure-relief valve must be installed with the new boiler and connected to a drain pipe, draining into a floor drain.



**Simple reverse-return hot-water system:** The reverse-return method of piping is the simplest way of balancing flow among heat emitters.

- Maintaining a low-limit boiler-water temperature is wasteful. Boilers should be controlled for a cold start, unless the boiler is used for domestic water heating.
- ✓ Insulate all supply piping, outside conditioned spaces, with foam or fiberglass pipe insulation.

- Extend new piping and radiators to conditioned areas like additions and finished basements, currently heated by space heaters.
- ✔ For large boilers, consider installing outdoor reset controllers to adjust



**Reset controller:** The circulating water is controlled by the reset controller according to the outdoor temperature.

- supply water temperature according to outdoor temperature.
- ✓ For large boilers, consider installing a cutout controller that prevents the boiler from firing when the outdoor temperature is above a certain setpoint where heat is not needed.

## **8.6 ELECTRIC HEATING**

Electricity is a cleaner, more convenient form of energy than gas or other fuels, but it is considerably more expensive. Electric heaters are usually 100% efficient at converting the electricity to heat in the room where they are located. However, coal- or oilgenerated electricity converts only about 30% of the fuel's potential energy to electricity.

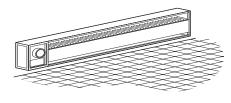
## **ELECTRIC BASEBOARD HEAT**

Electric baseboard heaters are zonal heaters controlled by thermostats within the zone they heat. Baseboard heaters contain electric resistance heating elements encased in metal pipes. These pipes extend the length of the unit and are surrounded by aluminum fins to aid heat transfer. As air within the heater is heated, it rises into the room. This draws cooler air into the bottom of the heater.

- ✓ Make sure that the baseboard heater sits at least an inch above the floor to facilitate good air convection.
- Clean fins and remove dust and debris from around and under the baseboard heaters as often as necessary.
- ✓ Avoid putting furniture directly against the heaters. To heat properly, there must be space for air convection.

There are two kinds of built-in electric baseboard heaters: stripheat and liquid-filled. Strip-heat units are less expensive than liquid-filled, but they don't heat as well. Strip-heat units release heat in short bursts, as the temperature of the heating elements rises to about 350°F. Liquid-filled baseboard heaters release heat more evenly over longer time periods, as the element temperature rises only to about 180°F.

The line-voltage thermostats used with baseboard heaters sometimes do not provide good comfort. This is because they allow the temperature in the room to vary by 2°F or more. Newer, more accurate thermostats are available. Automatic setback thermostats for electric baseboard heat employ timers or a resident-activated button that raises the temperature for a time and then automatically returns to setback.

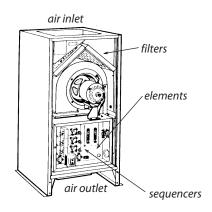


Electric baseboard: Electric baseboard is more efficient than an electric furnace and sometimes even outperforms a central heat pump because it is easily zoneable. The energy bill is determined by the habits of the occupants and the energy efficiency of the building.

## **ELECTRIC FURNACES**

An electric furnace heats air moved by its fan over several electric-resistance heating elements. Electric furnaces have three to six elements—3.5 to 7 kW each—that work like the elements in

a toaster. The 24-volt thermostat circuit energizes devices called sequencers that bring the 240 volt heating elements on in stages when the thermostat calls for heat. The variable speed fan switches to a higher speed as more elements engage to keep the air temperature stable.



**Electric furnace:** A squirrel-cage blower blows air over 3 to 6 electric resistance coils and down into the plenum below the floor.

Electric furnaces can be a problem for utility companies if they are using more 5-kW heating elements than are necessary to heat the home—the utility has a higher peak demand than it would if only the minimum number of elements were used. During mild weather, a couple elements are needed and in severe weather they might all be needed.

A standard heating thermostat, combined with an outdoor thermostat, can be used

to stage heating elements for different weather. This is not an energy-saving measure but a power-saving measure. Since staging elements benefit the utility company, they may be willing to pay for the savings to the utility power system.

Because electric furnaces are probably the most expensive way to heat a building, observe these operating and maintenance specifications.

- Replace air filters at regular intervals. The electric heating elements should be dusted and vacuumed if they are dirty. However, cleaning the heating elements shouldn't be necessary if air filters are changed regularly.
- ✓ Seal ducts absolutely airtight and insulate supply ducts.

- ✓ Install an outdoor staging thermostat to reduce peak load and/or increase comfort.
- ✓ Replace the electric furnace with another heating source.

## **HEAT PUMP ENERGY EFFICIENCY**

Like air conditioners, airsource heat pumps are available as centralized units with ducts or as room units. Heat pumps are 1.5 to 3 times more efficient than electric furnaces. Heat pumps can provide competitive comfort and value with com-



Is strip heat activated? Using an ammeter and the nameplate data on the heat pump, a technician can know when and if the strip heat is activated.

bustion furnaces but they must be ducted and installed with great care and planning. Heat pumps move heat with refrigeration rather than converting it from the chemical energy of a fuel.

An air-source heat pump is almost identical to an air conditioner, except for a reversing valve that allows refrigerant to follow two different paths, one for heating and one for cooling. Heat pumps are also equipped with auxiliary electric resistance heat, called strip heat. The energy efficiency of a heat pump is largely determined by how much of the heating load can be handled by the compressor without the aid of the strip heat.

Testing central heat pumps during the summer follows the same procedures as testing central air conditioners and described on *page 271*. Testing heat pumps in the winter is more difficult and some specifications follow.

- ✓ Look for a heat rise of around half the outdoor temperature in degrees Fahrenheit.
- Check for strip heat operation with an ammeter, using the
- main return

  filter
  heat rise

  total external static pressure

  blower

  main supply

  strip heat

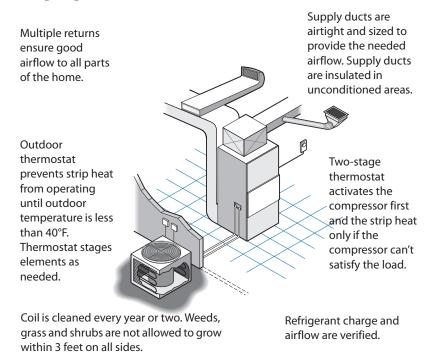
  ammeter detects
  strip heat

**Heat pump:** The air handler contains a blower, indoor coil, strip heat, and often a filter. Static pressure and temperature rise are two indicators of performance.

- chart shown here. Heat pumps should have two-stage thermostats designed for heat pumps. The first stage is compressor heating and the second stage is the strip heat.
- ✓ External static pressure should be 0.5 IWC (125 pascals) or less for older, fixed-speed blowers and less than 0.8 IWC (200 pascals) for variable-speed and two-speed blowers. Lower external static pressure is better. Take necessary steps to reduce external static pressure, such as enlarging branch ducts, installing additional supply and return ducts, and following other specifications on *page 247*.
- Supply ducts should be sealed and insulated after the airflow has been verified as adequate. Return ducts should be sealed too.

Most residential central heat pumps are split systems with evaporator and air handler indoors and condenser and compressor

outdoors. The illustrations show features of an energy-efficient heat pump installation.



Individual room heat pumps are more efficient since they have the advantage of no ducts and are factory-charged with refrigerant. Room heat pumps are discussed with room air conditioners on *page 270*.

## **Room heat pumps**

Room heat pumps can provide all or part of the heating and cooling needs for small homes. These one-piece room systems (also known as terminal systems) look like a room air conditioner, but provide heating as well as cooling. They can also provide ventilation air when neither heating nor cooling are required. They mount in a window or through a framed opening in a wall.

Room heat pumps can be a good choice for replacing existing un-vented gas space heaters or obsolete central heating systems. Their fuel costs may be somewhat higher than oil or gas furnaces, though they are safer and require less maintenance than combustion appliances. Room heat pumps also gain some overall efficiency because they heat a single zone and don't have the delivery losses associated with central furnaces and ductwork. If they replace electric resistance heat, they consume only one-half to one-third the electricity to produce the same amount of heat.

Room heat pumps have a cooling efficiency comparable to the best new window air conditioners. They operate at up to twice the efficiency of older air conditioners.

Room heat pumps draw a substantial electrical load, and may require 240-volt wiring. Provide a dedicated circuit that can support the equipment's rated electrical input. Insufficient wiring capacity can result in dangerous overheating, tripped circuit breakers, blown fuses, or motor-damaging voltage drops. In most cases a licensed electrician should confirm that the house wiring is sufficient. Don't run portable heat pumps or any other appliance with extension cords or plug adapters.

Observe the following specifications when installing room heat pumps.

- Install the unit in a central part of the home where air can circulate to other rooms. Choose a location near an electrical outlet, or where a new outlet can be installed if it's needed.
- Don't install the unit where bushes will interfere with its outdoor airflow. Heat pumps need lots of outdoor air circulation to operate at maximum efficiency.
- If you install the unit in a window, choose a doublehung or sliding window that stores out of the way. Portable units don't work well in out-swinging casement windows or up-swinging awning windows.

- If you install the unit in a framed opening in the wall, use the same guidelines you would to frame a new window or door. Provide headers, beams, or other structural supports where studs are cut, or install it in an opening under an existing window where structural support is already provided by the window framing.
- Provide solid supports underneath the unit. These can be manufactured brackets, wood-framed brackets, or brackets fabricated from metal. Fasten the unit with screws to the window jamb and/or sash.
- Seal around the exterior siding and trim to keep rain out
  of the wall cavity. Seal the unit to the opening with the
  shields provided by manufacturer or with plywood,
  caulking, or sheet metal.

Table 8-2: Installing Room Heat Pumps of Air Conditioners

Issue	Window installation	Wall installation
Difficulty of installation	Easiest.	Wall framing required.
Access issues	Window will be inoperable, with no access for fire egress or ventilation.	None.
Air sealing	Care required to properly seal unit to window jambs.	Easy to seal permanently.
Future adapt- ability	Easy to remove if homeowner switches fuel or type of system.	Poor. Homeowner is left with a hole in the wall if they switch fuel or type of system.

# CHAPTER 9: FORCED-AIR SYSTEM STANDARDS

The overall system efficiency of an oil or gas forced-air heating system is affected by blower operation, duct leakage, system airflow, balance between supply and return air, and duct insulation levels. Retrofits to the forced-air system generally are more cost-effective than retrofits to the heating unit itself.

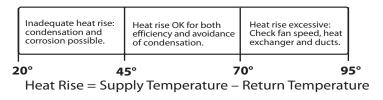
## 9.1 Furnace operating standards

The effectiveness of a furnace depends on its heat rise, fan-control temperatures, and flue-gas temperature. For efficiency you want a low heat rise. However, you must maintain a minimum flue-gas temperature to prevent corrosion in the venting of combustion furnaces. Apply the following furnace-operation standards to maximize the heating system's seasonal efficiency and safety.

- Check heat rise after 5 minutes of operation. Refer to manufacturer's nameplate for acceptable heat rise (supply temperature minus return temperature). The heat rise should be between 40°F and 70°F with the lower end of this scale being preferable for energy efficiency.
- All forced-air heating systems must deliver supply air and collect return air only within the intentionally heated portion of the house. Taking return air from an un-heated area of the house such as an unoccupied basement is not acceptable.
- The fan-off temperature should be between 95° and 105°
   F, with the lower end of the scale being preferable for maximum efficiency.
- The fan-on temperature should be 120-140° F, and the lower the better.

- On time-activated fan controls, verify that the fan is switched on within two minutes of burner ignition and is switched off within 2.5 minutes of the end of the combustion cycle.
- The high-limit controller should shut the burner off before the furnace temperature reaches 200°F.

Table 9-1: Furnace Operating Parameters



Unacceptable range: Excellent fan-off Borderline acceptable: Significant savings temperature if Consider replacing fan possible by adjusting comfort is acceptable. control. or replacing fan control. 100° 115° 85° 130° Fan-off Temperature Fair: Consider fan-control Excellent fan-on replacement if fan-off Poor: Adjust or replace temperature range: No temperature is also fan control. change needed. borderline.

140°

160°

If the heating system does not conform to these standards, consider the following improvements.

Fan-on Temperature

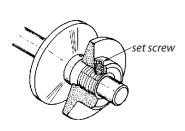
✔ Clean or change dirty filters. Clean air-conditioning coils.

120°

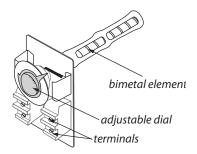
- ✓ Clean the blower, increase fan speed, and improve ducted air circulation. See page 248.
- ✓ Adjust fan control to conform to the above standards, or replace the fan control if adjustment fails. Many fan controls on modern furnaces aren't adjustable.

100°

- ✓ Adjust the high-limit control to conform to the above standards, or replace the high-limit control.
- After adjustments, measured flue-gas temperature should be no lower than manufacturer's specifications or the listed minimum values in *Table 6-1 on page 160*.



Adjustable drive pulley: This adjustable pulley moves back and forth allowing the belt to ride higher or lower, adjusting the blower's speed.



A fan/limit control: Turns the furnace blower on and off, according to temperature. Also turns the burner off if the heat exchanger gets too hot (high limit).

## 9.2 DUCT AIR-TIGHTNESS STANDARDS

Duct air leakage is a major energy-waster in homes where the ducts are located outside the home's thermal boundary in a crawl space, attic, attached garage, or leaky basement. When the weatherization job will leave these intermediate zones outside the thermal boundary, duct air-sealing is cost-effective.

Ducts should be tested to determine how much they leak before any duct air sealing is performed. Caution should be used when there is an A-Coil present in the system.

## MEASURING AND EVALUATING DUCT AIR LEAKAGE

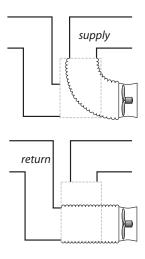
Duct leakage should always be minimized by sealing ducts during installation. Unfortunately, this simple standard has been ignored in most homes. Neme and his associates (quoted earlier) state that duct leakage averages around 300 CFM $_{25}$  among 19 duct-leakage studies, in 14,000 homes. This represents 25 to 35 percent of assumed airflow through the air handler.

Duct leakage may or may not be a significant energy and comfort problem, depending on where the ducts are located. If the ducts are located completely within the conditioned living space of a home, duct leakage is probably a minor problem. An example would be a two-story home with 1000 square feet of area on each floor where every square foot is heated and cooled.

If the ducts are located in a attic, crawl space, attached garage, unheated basement, or leaky floor cavity, duct leakage can be a major energy problem. The question then becomes "How much duct leakage is there and how much time and money can be spent to seal the ducts to an acceptable leakage standard?"

If existing ducts are located outside the home's thermal boundary, it's a safe bet that sealing their leaks will be cost-effective, assuming you don't have to perform demolition to find them. You can either assume high typical air leakage and begin sealing the system's leaks, working from the air handler out to the extremities. Or you can test existing ducts for an assessment of the quantity of air leakage and how much effort and money sealing will require. Testing also helps measure success and gives technicians valuable feedback.

## **DUCT-BLOWER LEAK-TESTING**



Testing ducts before airhandler installation: If the ducts are installed prior to the air handler, as with a furnace replacement or many new installations, the duct blower can test first supply then return ducts for airtightness.

To measure duct air leakage, pressurize the ducts using a duct blower. The duct blower is the most accurate common testing device for duct air leakage. It consists of a fan, a digital manometer or set of analog manometers, and a set of reducer plates for measuring different leakage levels.

The total duct leakage test measures leakage to both indoors and outdoors. The house and intermediate zones should be open to the outdoors by way of windows, doors, or vents. Opening the intermediate zones to outdoors insures that the duct blower is measuring only the ducts' airtightness—not the airtightness of ducts combined with other air barriers like roofs, foundation walls, or garages.

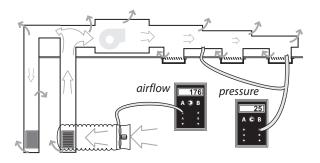
Supply and return ducts can be tested separately, either before the air handler is installed in a new home or when an air handler is removed during replacement.

Follow these steps when performing a duct airtightness test.

- Install the duct blower in the air handler or to a large return register, either using its connector duct or simply attaching the duct blower itself to the air handler or return register with cardboard and tape.
- 2. Remove the air filter(s) from the duct system.
- 3. Seal all supply and return registers with masking tape or other non-destructive sealant.

- 4. Open the house, basement or crawl space, containing ducts, to outdoors.
- 5. Drill a <sup>1</sup>/<sub>4</sub> or <sup>5</sup>/<sub>16</sub>-inch hole into a supply duct a short distance away from the air handler and insert a manometer hose. Connect a manometer to this hose to measure *duct WRT outdoors*. (Indoors, outdoors, and intermediate zones should ideally be opened to each other in this test).
- 6. Connect an airflow manometer to measure fan WRT the area near the fan.

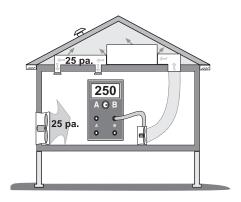
Check manometer(s) for proper settings. Dial-and-needle manometers may need warm-up and calibration. Digital manometers require your choosing the correct mode, range, and fan-type settings.



**Total duct air leakage measured by the duct blower:** All registers are sealed except the one connecting the duct blower to the system. Pressurize the ducts to 25 pascals and measure airflow.

1. Turn on the duct blower and pressurize the ducts to 25 pascals.

- 2. Record ductblower airflow.
- 3. While the ducts are pressurized, start at the air handler and move outward feeling for leaks in the air handler, main ducts, and branches.
- 4. After testing and associated air-sealing are complete, restore filter(s), remove seals from registers, and check air handler.



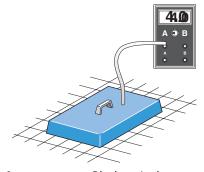
#### Measuring duct leakage to outdoors:

Using a blower door to pressurize the house with a duct blower to pressurize the ducts measures leakage to the outdoors— a smaller number and a better predictor of energy savings. This test is the preferred for evaluating duct leakage for specialists in both shell air leakage and duct air leakage whenever a blower door is available.

### PRESSURE-PAN TESTING

Pressure-pan tests can help identify leaky or disconnected ducts. With the house depressurized by the blower door to -25 or -50 pascals with reference to outdoors, pressure-pan readings are taken at each supply and return register. Pressure-pan testing is reliable for mobile homes and small sitebuilt homes where the ducts are outside the air barrier.

Basements are often considered part of the conditioned



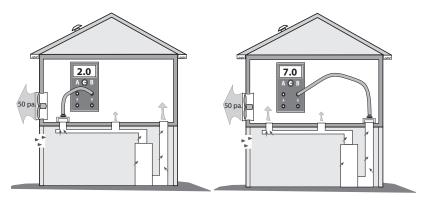
A pressure pan: Blocks a single register and measures the air pressure behind it, during a blower door test. The magnitude of that pressure is an indicator of duct leakage.

living space of a home. In this case, pressure-pan testing isn't necessary, although air-sealing the return ducts for safety is still

required. If instead, the basement is accessed from the outside and rarely used, the basement may be considered outside the conditioned living space. In this case, a window or door between the basement and outdoors should be opened, and any door or hatch between conditioned spaces and basement should be closed during pressure-pan testing.

- 1. Install blower door and set-up house for winter conditions. Open all interior doors.
- If the basement is conditioned living space, open the door between basement and upstairs living spaces. If the basement is considered outside the conditioned living space, close the door between basement and upstairs living spaces and open a basement window.
- 3. Turn furnace off. Remove furnace filter, and tape filter slot if one exists. Ensure that all grills, registers, and dampers are fully open.
- 4. Temporarily seal any outside fresh-air intakes to the duct system. Seal supply registers in zones that are not intended to be heated—an uninhabited basement or crawl space, for example.
- 5. Open attics, crawl spaces, and garages as much as possible to the outside so they don't create a secondary air barrier.
- 6. Connect hose between pressure pan and the input tap on the digital manometer. Leave the reference tap open.
- 7. With the blower door at -25 pascals, place the pressure pan completely over a grill or register to form a tight seal. Record the reading, which should be a positive pressure.
- 8. If a grill is too large or a supply register is difficult to access (under a kitchen cabinet, for example), seal the grill or register with masking tape. Insert a pressure probe through the masking tape and record reading.

9. Repeat this test for each register and grill in a systematic fashion.



**Pressure-pan test:** A pressure-pan reading of 2 indicates moderate duct air leakage.

**Problem register:** A pressure reading of 7 pascals indicates major air leakage near the tested register.

## Pressure-pan duct standards

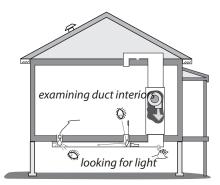
If the ducts are perfectly sealed with no leakage to the outside, no pressure difference (0 pascals) will be measured during a pressure-pan test. The higher the measured pressure-pan reading, the more connected the duct is to the outdoors. Readings greater than 1.0 pascal require investigation and sealing of leaks causing the reading.

Pay particular attention to registers connected to ducts that are located in areas outside the conditioned living space. These spaces include attics, crawl spaces, garages, and unoccupied basements as described previously. Also test return registers attached to stud cavities or panned joists used as return ducts. Leaky ducts located outside the conditioned living space may show pressure-pan readings of up to 25-to-50 pascals if they have large leaks.

## FINDING DUCT LEAKS USING TOUCH AND SIGHT

One of the simplest ways of finding duct leaks is feeling with your hand for air leaking out of supply ducts, while the ducts are pressurized by the air handler's blower. Duct leaks can also be located using light. Here are three different tests used to locate air leaks.

1. Use the air handler blower to pressurize supply ducts. Closing the dampers on supply registers temporarily or partially blocking the register with pieces of carpet, magazines, or any object that won't be blown off by the register's airflow will increase the duct pressure and make duct leaks easier to find.



feeling for air

**Finding duct air leaks:** Finding the exact location of duct leaks precedes duct air-sealing.

- 2. Place a trouble light, with a 100-watt bulb, inside the duct through a register. Look for light emanating from the exterior of duct joints and seams.
- 3. Recognize which duct joints were difficult to fasten and seal during installation. These joints are likely duct-leakage locations.

Feeling air leaks estab-

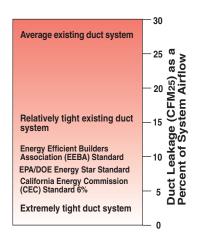
lishes their exact location. Ducts must be pressurized in order to feel leaks because you can't usually feel air leaking into depressurized ducts.

A trouble light, flashlight, and mirror help you to visually understand duct interiors so that you can plan an air-sealing procedure.

## 9.3 SEALING DUCT LEAKS

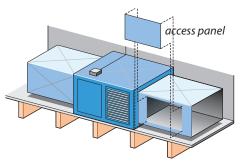
Ducts located outside the thermal boundary or in an intermediate zone like a ventilated attic or crawl space should be sealed. The following is a list of duct-leak locations in order of their relative importance.

Leaks nearer to the air handler see higher pressure and are more important than leaks further away.

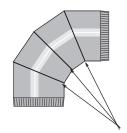


**Duct leakage standards:** Dividing the tested duct leakage in CFM<sub>25</sub> by the assumed system airflow of 400 CFM per ton provides the most common type of duct-leakage standard.

- ✓ First, seal all return leaks within the combustion zone to prevent this leakage from depressurizing the combustion zone and causing backdrafting.
- ✓ Plenum joint at air handler: These joints may have been difficult to fasten and seal because of tight access. Go the extra mile to seal them airtight by caulking this important joint even if it requires cutting an access hole in the plenum. (Avoid mastic and fabric mesh here for future access—furnace replacement, for example.)

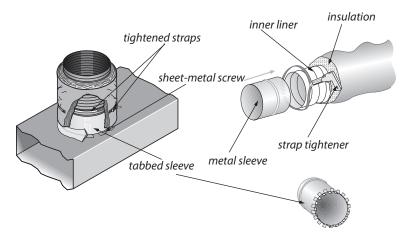


Plenums, poorly sealed to air handler: When air handlers are installed in tight spaces, plenums may be poorly fastened and sealed. Cutting a hole in the duct may be the only way to seal it.



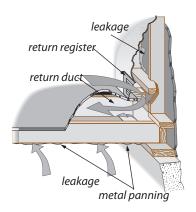
Sectioned elbows: Joints in sectioned elbows known as gores are usually quite leaky and require sealing with duct mastic.

- ✓ Joints at branch takeoffs: These important joints should be sealed with a thick layer of mastic. Fabric mesh tape is a plus for new installations or when access is easy.
- ✓ Joints in sectioned elbows: Known as gores, these are usually leaky.
- ✓ Tabbed sleeves: Attach the sleeve to the main duct with 3-to-5 screws and apply mastic plentifully.
- ✔ Flexduct-to-metal joints: Apply mastic to the metal sleeve. Clamp the flexduct's inner liner over this strip of mastic with a plastic strap, using a strap tensioner. Clamp the insulation and outer liner with another strap.
- Support ducts and duct joints with duct hangers where needed.
- Seal leaky joints between building materials composing cavity-return ducts, like panned floor cavities and furnace return platforms.



**Flexduct joints:** Flexduct itself is usually fairly airtight, but joints, sealed improperly with tape, can be very leaky. Use methods shown here to make flexduct joints airtight.

- Seal leaky joints between supply and return registers and the floor, wall, and ceiling to which they are attached.
- Consider sealing off supply and return registers in unoccupied basements.
- Seal penetrations made by wires or pipes traveling through ducts. Even better: move the pipes and wires and patch the holes.



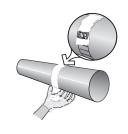
Panned floor joists: These return ducts are often very leaky and may require removing the panning to seal the cavity.

## Materials for duct air-sealing

Duct mastic is the preferred ductsealing material because of its superior durability and adhesion. Apply at least  $^{1}/_{16}$ -inch thick and use reinforcing mesh for all joints wider than  $^{1}/_{8}$  inch or joints that may experience some movement.

Siliconized acrylic-latex caulk is acceptable for sealing joints in panned joist spaces, used for return ducts.

Joints should rely on mechanical fasteners to prevent joint movement or separation. Tape should never be





**Duct mastic:** Mastic, reinforced with fabric webbing, is the best choice for sealing ducts.

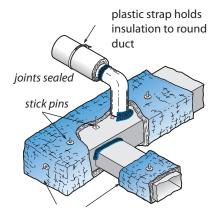
expected to hold a joint together nor expected to resist the force of compacted insulation or joint movement. Aluminum foil or cloth duct tape are not good materials for duct sealing because their adhesive often fails after a short time.

## 9.4 DUCT INSULATION

Insulate supply ducts that run through unconditioned areas outside the thermal boundary such as crawl spaces, attics, and attached garages with a minimum of R-6 vinyl- or foil-faced duct insulation. Don't insulate ducts that run through conditioned areas unless they cause overheating in winter or condensation in summer. Follow the best practices listed below for installing insulation.

 Always perform necessary duct sealing before insulating ducts.

- Insulation should cover all exposed supply ducts, without significant areas of bare duct left uninsulated.
- Insulation should be fastened by mechanical means such as stick pins, twine, or plastic straps. Tape can be effective for covering joints in the insulation to prevent air convection, but tape will usually fail if expected to resist the force of the insulation's compression or weight.



duct insulation fastened with stick pins

**Duct insulation:** Supply ducts, located in unheated areas, should be insulated to a minimum of R-6.

## 9.5 IMPROVING DUCT AIRFLOW

Inadequate airflow is a common cause of comfort complaints. The airflow capacity of the air handler may be evaluated in relationship to the capacity of the furnace or air conditioner. For combustion furnaces, there should be 110-to-150 cfm of airflow for each 10,000 Btuh of output. Central air conditioners and heat pumps should deliver 400 cfm of airflow per ton of cooling capacity.

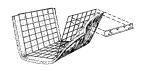
When the air handler is on there should be a strong flow of air out of each supply register, providing its balancing damper is open. Low airflow may mean that a branch is blocked or separated, or that return air is not sufficient. When low airflow is a problem, consider the following obvious improvements.

- Clean or change filter.
- Clean furnace blower.

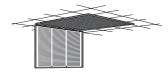
- Clean air-conditioning or heat pump coil. (If the blower is dirty, the coil is probably also dirty.)
- Increase blower speed.
- ✓ Lubricate blower motor, and check tension on drive belt.
- ✔ Repair or replace bent, damaged, or restricted registers.



Panel filter installed in filter slot in return plenum



Washable filter installed on a rack inside the blower compartment.



Panel filter installed in return register

**Furnace filter location:** Filters are installed on the return-air side of forced air systems. Look for them in one or more of the above locations.

## **FILTER AND BLOWER MAINTENANCE**

A dirty filter can reduce airflow significantly. Take action to prevent filter-caused airflow restriction by taking the following steps:

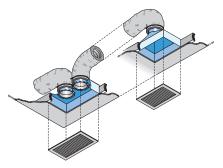
- Insure that filters are easy to change or clean.
- Stress to the client the importance of changing or cleaning filters, and suggest to the client a regular filter-maintenance schedule.
- Clean the blower. This task involves removing the blower and removing dirt completely with a brush or water spray.

- Special air-cleaning filters offer more resistance than standard filters, especially when saturated with dust.
   Avoid using them, unless you test for airflow after installation.
- Measure the current draw of the blower motor in amps. If the amp measurement exceeds the motor full load amp (FLA) rating by more than 10%, replace the motor.

## **DUCT IMPROVEMENTS TO INCREASE AIRFLOW**

Consider the following improvements in response to customer complaints and conditions you observe during a thorough duct inspection. Unbalanced airflow through ducts can pressurize or depressurize rooms, leading to increased air leakage through the building shell. Consider the following duct changes to increase system airflow and reduce the imbalance between supply and return.

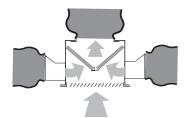
- Clean dirty filters and modify system to allow easier filter changing.
- Remove obstructions to registers and ducts such as rugs, furniture, and objects placed inside ducts, like children's toys and water pans for humidification.
- ✓ Remove kinks from flex duct, and replace collapsed flex duct and fiberglass duct board.
- ✓ Inspect the blower for dirt, and clean the blower if necessary.
- ✓ If the blower is dirty, an air conditioning coil, if present, is probably also dirty. *See page 269*.
- Install additional supply ducts and return ducts as needed to provide heated air throughout the building, especially in additions to the building.
- ✓ Install a transfer grill between the bedroom and main body of house to improve airflow.



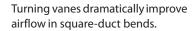
Jumper ducts can bring air from a restricted area of the home back to a main return register.



Installing grills in doors or through walls allows return air to escape from bedrooms.



You can expand an existing return register by connecting a return box and then run one or more branch returns into the box in a way that all the air is filtered.





**Restricted return air:** Return air is often restricted, requiring a variety of strategies to relieve the resulting house pressures and low system airflow. Installing an additional return duct directly into the air handler is a preferred strategy.

- Undercut bedroom doors, especially in homes with single return registers.
- ✓ Retrofit jumper ducts, composed of one register in the bedroom, one register in the central return-air zone, and a duct in between (usually running through an attic or crawl space).

Install registers and grills where missing.

## **ADDING NEW DUCTS**

New ducts should not be installed in unconditioned spaces unless absolutely necessary. If ducts are located in unconditioned spaces, joints should be sealed and the ducts insulated as described previously. *See pages 235 and 246*.

New ducts must be physically connected to the existing distribution system or to the furnace. Install balancing damper in each new branch duct. Registers should terminate each new supply or return branch duct.

The return side of the forced-air system is often the most restricted side and the one needing an increased volume of air from the house. When a main metal duct trunk makes a 90° bend, usually near the air handler, retrofit turning vanes may increase airflow significantly.

Connecting a new duct to the existing return main duct won't usually improve airflow significantly because this approach doesn't increase the cross-sectional area of duct connected to the blower compartment. A standard air handler usually has three or four sides where a large return duct can attach. If the blower is very close to one of the air handler's walls, that side should not be used to attach another return duct. Choose a central location as remote as possible from the existing return register to install a new one. Run flexduct or metal duct from the air handler to the new return.

Jumper returns or pass-through grills are also effective to increase airflow as long as you don't create air leaks in existing ducts or the building shell by installing them.

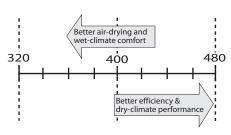
When a return register is installed in a floor or ceiling, you can enlarge the return by adding a large sheet-metal box with a filter inside with space for installing one or two additional returns. Whenever the air handler is accessible, install the filter in or near the air handler so that any duct leakage will be filtered.

Return leaks can deposit a lot of dust on heat exchangers, blowers, and coils.

## 9.6 Measuring and evaluating system airflow

Cooling efficiency is more dependent on airflow than heating efficiency. Also, refrigerant charge and airflow are interdependent and are best checked during the cooling season.

The correct airflow for a heat pump or air conditioner is usually expressed in cubic feet per minute per ton of cooling capacity (one ton equals 12,000 Btus per hour). When the heat pump or air conditioner is operating in the cooling mode, the acceptable airflow rate is 400 cfm  $\pm 20\%$ , according to most manufacturers.



**Airflow and climate:** More airflow per ton provides better efficiency and performance for dry climates, and less airflow provides better dehumidification for wet climates.

In dry climates, you may increase performance and efficiency by increasing airflow to 480 cfm per ton if noise and comfort allow. In wet climates, the recommended airflow per ton may be somewhat less than 400 cfm per ton to facilitate dehumidification by keeping the coil

cooler and air moving slower across the coil.

The EPA-sponsored report quoted earlier reported that 70% of over 400 homes tested had less than 350 cfm per ton with an average of 327 cfm per ton. Correcting airflow would save an average of 8% of cooling energy according to the report.

Airflow is often measured both before duct-sealing and after because duct-sealing may change the measured airflow. Tighter ducts may be more restrictive because duct leaks provide pressure relief through additional inlet and outlet area, which is lost when they are sealed.

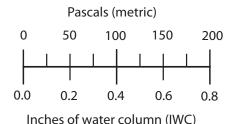
Technicians use a number of different airflow measuring techniques, depending on their equipment, training, and preferences. The type of air handler and ducts is also a factor when choosing an airflow-measuring method.

The most accurate and reliable methods for measuring system airflow are the duct-blower method and the flow-plate method. Measuring return airflow with a flow hood is also a fairly accurate and reliable method if the flow hood is properly calibrated and used according to manufacturer's instructions.

There are also a couple of airflow indicators, which are measurements of static pressure and temperature change across the indoor coil. These measurements won't give an accurate measurement of airflow, but they are used to detect inadequate airflow.

#### Airflow and blower speed

A blower in the air handler can have as many as five speeds. The first step in measuring airflow by any of the methods described here is to make sure that the blower is operating at one of the higher speeds, normally reserved for cooling. (Heating typically uses a lower speed.) Sometimes cooling is assigned a lower blower speed by mistake, so checking which blower speed is paired with cooling is a necessary preparatory step to airflow testing. If the blower speed isn't obvious when looking at the airhandler terminal block, clamp an ammeter around the color of wire corresponding to one of the higher speeds, in order to determine which blower speed is energized while cooling. It isn't necessary to operate the compressor and condenser fan in order to measure airflow.



Pressure in two measurement systems: Technicians and engineers

use both Pascals (metric) and inches of water column (American) to measure duct pressures.

duct pressures.

### Preparing to measure airflow

The idea behind the following preparatory steps is to solve any obvious large problems. We really don't need sophisticated test instruments to discover that filters, indoor coils, or blowers are packed with dirt or that the branch duct to the master bedroom is disconnected. Finding

these problems before measuring duct airflow will speed up the commissioning process. The following steps precede airflow measurements.

- 1. Ask the customer about comfort problems and temperature differences in various parts of the home.
- 2. Based on the customers comments, look for disconnected or restricted ducts.
- 3. Inspect the filter(s), blower, and indoor coil for dirt. Clean them if necessary. If the indoor coil isn't easily visible, a dirty blower is a fair indicator that the coil may also be dirty.
- 4. From the nameplate, note the cooling capacity in tons. Tons =  $Btu/hour \div 12,000$ . The ideal airflow is around 400 cfm per ton.
- 5. Notice moisture problems like mold and mildew. Moisture sources, like a wet crawl space, can overpower air conditioners by introducing more moisture into the air than the air conditioner can remove.

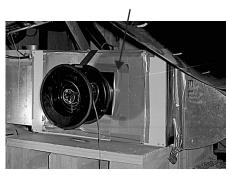
#### **DUCT-BLOWER AIRFLOW MEASUREMENT**

The duct blower is a fan mounted in an aerodynamic housing and equipped with a precise pressure-sampling tube. The duct blower is the most accurate airflow-measuring device currently available.

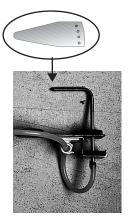
During this airflow test, all return air is routed through the duct blower where the airflow can be measured. The return air traveling through the duct blower is moved by the air handler's blower aided by the duct blower.

- 1. Set up a static pressure gauge to measure the duct pressure in the supply plenum, or a few feet away from the supply plenum, in a main supply. Tape the static pressure probe to hold it in place. The point of the probe should face into the oncoming airflow with the probe's static-pressure openings perpendicular to the airflow direction.
- 2. Make sure all supply registers and return grills are open. Leave filters installed.

Main return is disconnected and the air handler is sealed.



**Duct blower mounted to air handler:** The best way to measure airflow with a duct blower is to connect the duct blower to the air handler and seal the main return.



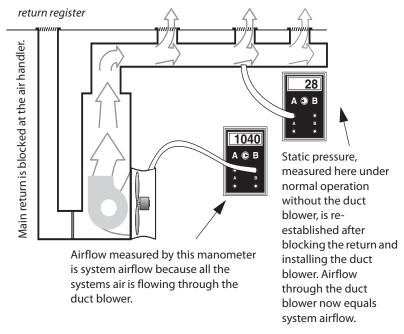
**Static pressure probe:** Tiny holes near the tip sense static pressure from airflow perpendicular to the holes.

- 3. Turn on the system and measure static pressure from the probe installed in Step 1.
- 4. Shut off power to the air handler. Connect the duct blower to blow into the air handler at the blower compartment or the single return register, using one of the two options outlined below.
- For single- or multiple-return systems: The preferred method of connecting the duct blower is to block the return plenum's main return entry to the air handler. Filters are often installed in a good location to achieve this temporary blockage. Alternatively, you can support the main return and move it temporarily out of your way, while you seal the opening to the air handler with cardboard and tape. Then connect the duct blower to the blower compartment after removing the door.
- Option for singlereturn systems: Remove the grill at the single return register. Connect the duct blower through its flexible tube or else directly to the register, using cardboard to block off the excess area of the register. (Note: If there is significant return leakage, airflow measurement will be artificially high.)

All the return air should now come through the duct blower. If the duct blower is connected to an air handler,



**Duct blower mounted to main return:** With a single return, it's convenient to attach the duct blower to the single main return register.
However, this option may result in an artificially high airflow reading.



located outside the conditioned space, the door or access panel between the conditioned space and the air handler location must be opened. Now you are ready to measure system airflow.

- 1. Turn on the air-handler fan once again, making sure the air-handler fan is running at the correct speed for cooling.
- 2. Turn on the duct blower to blow into the air handler, increasing airflow until the manometer measuring supply-plenum static pressure reads the same as your original static-pressure measurement.
- 3. Measure and record the airflow through the duct blower. Refer to the duct-blower instruction book, if necessary, to insure that you know how to take the reading. The airflow reading you take directly from the digital manometer or look up in the manufacturer's table for converting pressure to flow is total system airflow in cubic feet per minute (CFM).

### FLOW-PLATE METHOD FOR MEASURING SYSTEM AIRFLOW

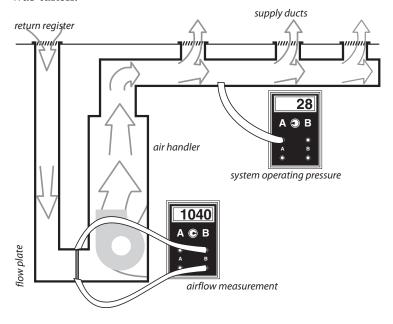
The TrueFlow® air-handler flow meter, manufactured by The Energy Conservatory of Minneapolis, is relatively fast and easy to use. This flow meter is a plate with holes and sampling tubes that samples and averages velocity pressures and converts them into an airflow measurement.

One of two flow plates are inserted and sealed at their edges in the filter slot or bracket within the air handler. Then, the staticpressure drop across the flow plate is measured and airflow is found on printed tables supplied by the manufacturer or automatically by the digital manometer.

When used according to the manufacturer's instructions, which are summarized below, the accuracy of this method is better than the other tests described on these pages, with the exception of the duct-blower test. Refer to the manufacturer's instructions for the precise testing method. A summary follows.

- 1. Measure and record the normal system operating pressure, with a standard filter in place, using a static pressure probe in the supply plenum or supply duct near the air handler.
- 2. Replace the existing filter with the flow plate. Seal the flow plate into the slot, according to the manufacturer's recommendations.
- 3. Measure and record the system's operating pressure with the flow plate in place, at the same location as when the filter was in place.
- Measure the flow through the TrueFlow Meter using the digital manometer supplied by the manufacturer.
   Obtain flow from the numerical table or the digital manometer itself.

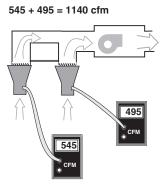
5. Calculate a correction factor from the measured operating pressures (using a correction table) and multiply by the measured flow to get the original flow rate, moving through the air handler when the first measurement was taken.



**True Flow® Meter:** The True Flow® flow plate installs in a filter slot and measures system airflow almost as accurately as the duct blower.

#### MEASURING AIRFLOW WITH A FLOW HOOD

This test measures the fairly laminar airflow at return registers. Measuring supply-register airflow isn't as accurate as measuring return airflow because supply air is more turbulent and because floor supply registers close to walls don't allow the flow hood to be centered over them. The flow-hood inlet must be larger than the return grills, although 10 percent of the register may be blocked with tape to allow the flow hood to cover that reduced opening.



Measuring return air with a flow hood: This method provides an estimate of system airflow. It can significantly underestimate airflow because return duct leakage bypasses the measurement.

This test works best on systems with one to four return grills located in areas where a flow hood can cover the grills and be centered over them. Keep in mind that the return airflow will appear low if the return ducts are very leaky. A low reading may mean that the system is drawing some of its return air from a crawl space, attic, or attached garage.

- 1. Turn on the air handler to run at the higher fan speed, normally used for cooling.
- 2. Center the flow hood over the return register, covering it completely. If the register is larger than the flow hood, seal up to 10 percent of the register with tape before covering it.
- 3. Read and record the airflows through the return registers. Add the measured airflows of the return registers together to get the total system airflow.

#### MEASURING TOTAL EXTERNAL STATIC PRESSURE

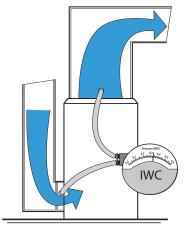
Total exterior static pressure (TESP), created by the duct system, gives a rough indicator of whether airflow is adequate. TESP is the sum of the absolute values of the supply and return static pressures. The supply and return static pressures by themselves can indicate whether the supply or return or both are restricted. The greater the TESP, the lower the airflow.

The TESP test can estimate airflow if the manufacturer's table for static pressure versus airflow is available. The ducts, registers, and a coil mounted in the ducts (if present) create the system's resistance measured by static pressure in inches of water column (IWC) or pascals. The return static is negative and the supply static is positive. The positive or negative signs are disregarded when adding supply static and return static to get TESP.

- 1. Attach two static pressure probes to tubes leading to the ports of the manometer. For analog manometers, attach the high-side port to the probe inserted downstream of the coil or air handler.
- 2. Take the readings on each side of the air handler to obtain both supply and return static pressures separately. Disregard positive or negative signs given by a digital manometer when performing addition.
- 3. Consult manufacturer's literature for a table, relating static pressure difference to airflow for the blower or air handler. Find airflow for the static pressure measured above.

Air handlers deliver their airflow at a TESPs ranging from 0.30 IWC (75 Pascals) and 1.0 IWC (250 Pascals) as found in the field. Manufacturer's maximum recommended static pressure is usually a maximum 0.50 IWC for standard air handlers. TESPs greater than 0.50 IWC indicate the possibility of poor airflow in standard residential forced-air systems.

The popularity of pleated filters, electrostatic filters, electronic air cleaners, and high-static high-efficiency evaporator coils, prompted manufacturers to introduce premium air handlers that can deliver adequate airflow at TESP of greater than 0.50 IWC. Premium residential air handlers can provide adequate airflow with TESP up to 0.90 IWC. TESPs greater than 1.00 IWC indicate the possibility of poor airflow in these premium residential forced-air systems.



#### Total external static pressure

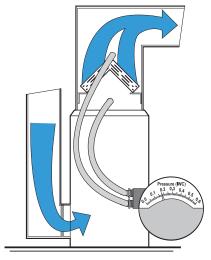
(TESP): The positive and negative pressures created by the resistance of the supply and return ducts produces TESP. The measurement shown here simply adds the two static pressures without regard for their signs. As TESP increases, airflow decreases. Numbers shown here are for example only.

Table 9-2: Total external static pressure versus system airflow

TESP (IWC)	0.3	0.4	0.5	0.6	0.7	0.8
CFM	995	945	895	840	760	670

#### STATIC-PRESSURE DROP ACROSS COIL OR FILTER

Measuring static pressure drop across a coil or filter can give a fair estimate of airflow when the filter or coil is new. Manufacturers often provide a table showing airflow through the filter or coil under different static pressures. Static pressure can vary widely from point to point within the measurement area, especially when ducts take an abrupt change of direction near the air handler. Access to both sides of the coil for testing static pressure can be difficult. Drilling test holes requires care and planning to avoid damaging the indoor coil if it is located in a duct.



#### Static pressure drop across coil: The more static pressure applied to a new clean coil, the greater the airflow will be through it. Manufacturers often provide data for both dry and wet coils. Numbers shown here for example only.

Table 9-2: Static-pressure drop versus airflow through coil

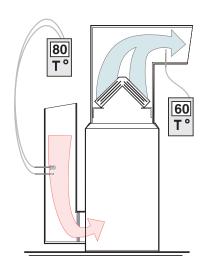
S.P.	.23	.27	.31	.36	.41
CFM	1000	1100	1200	1300	1400

#### **CARRIER® TEMPERATURE-SPLIT METHOD**

Carrier Corporation uses dry-bulb supply temperature as an indicator of whether airflow is adequate. This method requires measuring the return-air wet-bulb and dry-bulb temperatures. From these temperatures, the recommended dry-bulb temperature is determined from a slide rule provided by Carrier. If the measured dry-bulb temperature is lower than the listed value, the airflow is probably too low. If the temperature is higher than the listed value, the airflow is probably higher than 400 cfm per ton, which is usually no problem.

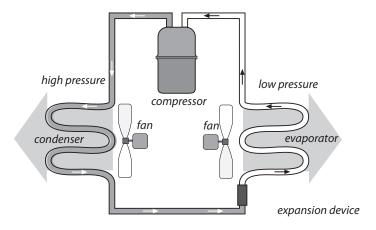
For recommendations on improving duct-system airflow, see *page 253*.

Carrier temperature-split method: First measure return wet-bulb and dry-bulb temperature. Check the chart below for the suggest supply dry-bulb temperature. Then measure the actual dry-bulb supply temperature. If the measured temperature is lower than suggested, the airflow is too low.



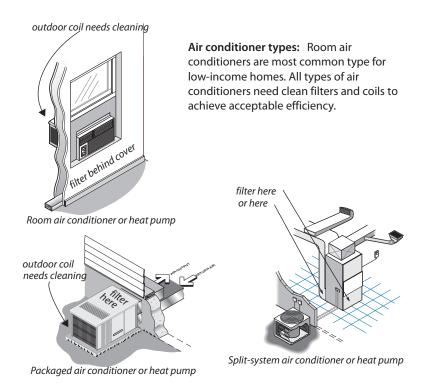
# CHAPTER 10: MECHANICAL COOLING AND HEAT PUMPS

Mechanical cooling systems include air conditioners and evaporative coolers. Each of these can be either be a room-cooling unit or a central unit with ducts. Heat pumps are reversible air conditioners, providing winter heating in addition to summer cooling.



**Refrigeration and air-conditioning cycle:** Refrigerant evaporates in the evaporator, absorbing heat from the metal coil and the indoor air. The compressor compresses the refrigerant, and moves it to the condenser. In the condenser, the condensing refrigerant heats the condenser coil to a significantly higher temperature than the outdoor air. The outdoor air that circulates through the condenser then removes the heat that was collected from indoors.

Air conditioners come in two basic types, packaged systems and split systems. Packaged air conditioners include room air conditioners and room heat pumps, along with packaged central air conditioners and heat pumps mounted on roofs and on concrete slabs outdoors. Split systems have a condenser outdoors and an air-conditioning coil, located indoors inside a furnace, heat pump, or adjoining main supply duct.

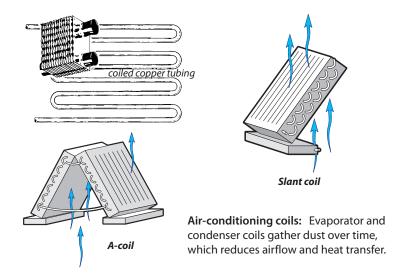


#### 10.1 CLEANING AIR-CONDITIONING COILS

Clean filters and air-conditioning coils are a minimum requirement for efficient operation. For more information on filters and their location, see *page 248*.

Keeping filters clean is the best way to keep coils clean. Cleaning an indoor air-conditioning coil is much more difficult than changing or cleaning a filter. When a filter is dirty or absent, dirt collects on the coil, fan blades, and other objects in the air stream. The dirt deposits reduce airflow and will eventually cause the air-conditioning system to fail.

Dirt builds up on a coil from the side where the air enters. The heaviest deposits of lint, hair, and grease will coat that side of the indoor coil. The best strategy is to dampen this surface layer and brush the heavy dirt off before trying to wash the finer dirt out with a biodegradable indoor coil cleaner and water.

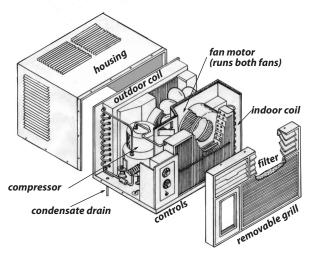


The outdoor coils of air conditioning systems aren't protected by filters. They get dirty depending on how much dust is in the outdoor air. If there is little dust and pollen in an area, the outdoor coil may only need cleaning every three years or so. However, if there is a lot of pollen and dust, annual cleaning is a good practice. It is a safe assumption that all outdoor coils need cleaning. Use a biodegradable cleaner designed for cleaning outdoor coils.

#### **CLEANING ROOM AC AND HEAT PUMP COILS**

Room air conditioners have foam or fiberglass filters that lie up against the inside coil. It's good practice to carry a roll of filter material to replace worn-out or non-existent filters. Cleaning the indoor coil is easy since the heaviest dirt collects on the surface of the coil facing the inside of the home. Cleaning the outdoor coil is more difficult. Usually cleaning the outdoor coil involves removing the room air conditioner from the window and taking it to an outdoor location where you can use a garden

hose. The housing of the air conditioner must be removed to clean the outdoor coil. Again, use indoor coil cleaner for the indoor coil and outdoor coil cleaner for the outdoor coil. Each is designed for a different variety of dirt and has different environmental specifications.



**Cleaning room air conditioners:** Room-air-conditioner performance deteriorates as it accumulates dirt. The unit will eventually fail to cool the room or break down unless cleaned.

Observe the following steps when cleaning the indoor and outdoor coils of a room air conditioner.

- 1. Remove the grill and filter on the interior side of the unit.
- 2. Unplug and remove the air conditioner temporarily from the window or wall. With some units, the mechanical parts slide out of the housing, and with others you must remove the whole unit, housing and all.
- 3. Take the unit to a clean outdoor area that drains well, like a driveway or patio.

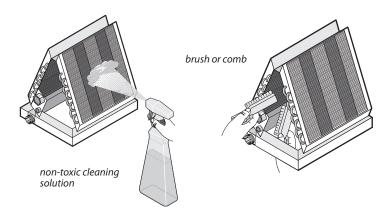
- 4. Cover the compressor, fan motor, and electrical components with plastic bags, held in place with rubber bands.
- 5. Dampen each of the coils with a light spray of water, then rake as much dirt off the coils as you can with an old hairbrush.
- 6. Spray indoor coil cleaner into the indoor coil and outdoor coil cleaner into the outdoor coil, and let the cleaner set for a minute or two.
- 7. Rinse the cleaner and dirt out of the coils with a gentle spray from a hose.
- 8. Repeat the process again until the water draining from the coils is clean.
- 9. Straighten bent fins with a fin comb to prevent bent fins from reducing airflow.

#### **CLEANING BLOWERS AND INDOOR COILS**

Every indoor coil should be protected by an air filter that fills the entire cross-sectional area of return duct leading to the blower and indoor coil. Filters are easier to change or clean compared to cleaning a blower or coil. If equipped with clean well-fitting filters, the blower and coil will remain clean for many years. However, many coils haven't had the benefit of such filters and are packed with dirt.

- 1. Shut off the main switch to the air handler.
- 2. Open the blower compartment and look into the blades of the blower, using a flashlight. Reach in and slide your finger along a fan blade. Have you collected a mound of dust?
- 3. If the blower is dirty, remove it and clean it. If you remove the motor, you can use hot water or household cleanser to remove the dirt.

- 4. If the blower is dirty, the indoor coil is probably also dirty. Inspect the coil visually if you have access. Create an access hatch if needed.
- 5. If the coil is dirty, clean it using a brush, indoor coil cleaner and water.
- 6. Straighten bent fins with a fin comb to prevent bent fins from reducing airflow.
- 7. Clean the drain pan and drain line.



**Cleaning an A-coil:** A-coils are found in upflow and downflow air handlers. In downflow models the dirt collects on top and on upflow units dirt collects on the bottom. Clean the coil, drain pan, and drain line.

#### 10.2 EVALUATING REFRIGERANT CHARGE

The performance and efficiency of residential and light-commercial air conditioners and heat pumps is very dependent upon having the correct amount of refrigerant in the system. This section describes accepted procedures for measuring and adjusting refrigerant charge in residential and light-commercial air conditioners and heat pumps. The EPA-sponsored report, mentioned in Chapter 1, states that 74% of split-system air conditioners contained a refrigerant charge that was more than 5% higher or lower than the manufacturer's specifications. The

report's authors estimate that correcting the charge would save an average of 12% of energy used for cooling.

The testing procedure for different air conditioners and heat pumps depends on the type of expansion valve the unit has. Units with fixed-orifice expansion devices require superheat testing. Units with TXVs require subcooling testing. All testing and subsequent addition or removal of refrigerant should be done by qualified and EPA-licensed refrigeration technicians.

#### PREPARATIONS FOR CHARGE TESTING

Refrigerant-charge testing and adjustment should be done after airflow measurement and improvement and after duct testing and sealing. The logic behind this sequence is that airflow should be adequate before duct sealing is done in case you have to add or enlarge ducts. Manufacturers recommend that adequate airflow be verified before charge is checked and adjusted.

With existing condenser units, it's an excellent idea to clean the condenser coil before testing and adjusting refrigerant charge. After cleaning the coil with outdoor coil cleaner, let the coil dry thoroughly. Otherwise suction and head pressures will read abnormally low.

#### Required equipment

For withdrawing refrigerant, use a U.S. Department of Transportation (D.O.T.) recovery cylinder. You'll usually be adding refrigerant from a R-22 or R-410A cylinder, however you can put refrigerant back into the same unit from the recovery cylinder after evacuating the system.

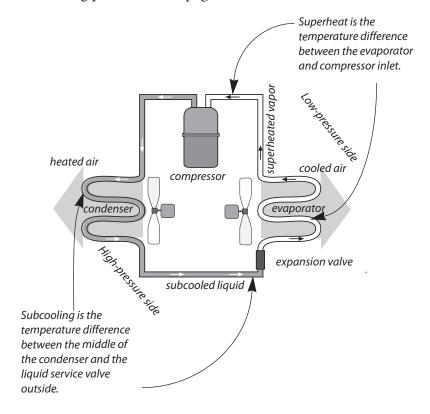
Required equipment includes a refrigeration gauge set and a digital thermometer. The digital thermometer should have a cloth covering for the tip of one of its thermocouples, which is wetted to measure wet-bulb temperature of air entering the evaporator. A sling psychrometer can also be used to measure wet-bulb temperature of air entering the evaporator.

### **EVAPORATOR SUPERHEAT TEST FOR REFRIGERANT CHARGE**

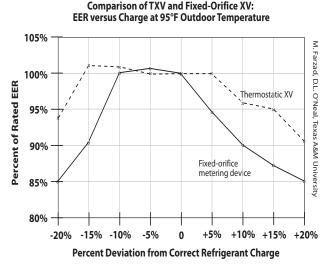
Adjusting the refrigerant charge to produce the recommended superheat temperature, based on current indoor and outdoor temperatures optimizes system performance and efficiency. Superheat is a good indicator of correct charging for air conditioners and heat pumps with capillary-tube or fixed-orifice expansion devices, operating in the cooling mode.

Use this test only for fixed orifice or capillary-tube systems and not for thermostatic expansion value (TVX) systems. This test should only be done when the outdoor temperature is at least 60°F.

1. Before checking charge, test and verify adequate airflow, using procedures on *page 252*.

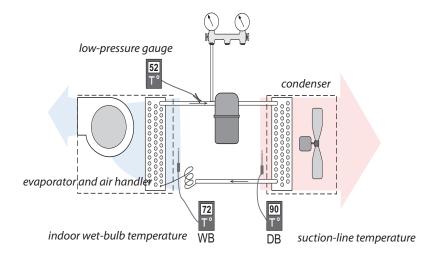


- 2. Measure the dry bulb temperature of the air entering the outdoor coil.
- 3. Measure the wet bulb temperature of the return air at the air handler.
- 4. Determine the recommended superheat temperature from a superheat table.
- 5. Measure the compressor-suction pressure at the suction-service valve. Add 2 pounds per square inch of gauge pressure (psig) for line losses between the evaporator and compressor. Then convert this adjusted pressure to a boiling-point temperature using temperature-pressure tables.



**Energy Efficiency Ratio (EER) degrades:** Thermostatic expansion valves compensate a little for charge that is too high or low. Fixed-orifice expansion devices are more severely affected by incorrect charge.

Measure the suction-line temperature at the suction service valve by attaching a thermocouple there, taped and insulated to the piping.



**Superheat test:** Superheat is the heat added to the evaporating vapor to ensure that no liquid enters the compressor. For a fixed-orifice system this value varies with outdoor temperature and indoor temperature and humidity.

Low-pressure gauge reads 67 psi, which corresponds to  $39^{\circ}F$  evaporating temperature. Superheat is  $52^{\circ} - 39^{\circ} = 13^{\circ}F$ .

- 7. Subtract the boiling-point temperature determined in (4) from the measured temperature in (5). This is the actual superheat temperature.
- 8. If the actual superheat is greater than the recommended superheat obtained from the table by more than 5°F, add 2-4 ounces of refrigerant, and wait at least ten minutes before repeating this superheat procedure.
- 9. If the actual superheat is less than the ideal by more than 5°F, remove 2-4 ounces refrigerant, and wait at least ten minutes before measuring superheat again. Refrigerant must be removed into a Department-of-Transportation approved (DOT-approved) recovery

cylinder, either empty or containing the same refrigerant as the system.

Table 10-1: Ideal Superheat Values for Different Indoor and Outdoor Conditions

Measur ed Return	lemperature												
-Air Wet Bulb	5 5	6	6 5	7 0	7 5	8	8 5	9	9	10 0	10 5	11 0	11 5
76	4 5	4 3	4 1	3 9	3 7	3 5	3	3 1	2 9	27	26	25	23
74	4 2	4 0	3 8	3 6	3 4	3 1	3	2 7	2 5	23	22	20	18
72	4 0	3 8	3 6	3	3 0	2 8	2 6	2 4	2 2	20	17	15	14
70	3 7	3 5	3	3 0	2 8	2 5	2 2	2 0	1 8	15	13	11	8
68	3 5	3	3 0	2 7	2 4	2	1 9	1 6	1 4	12	9	6	-
66	3 2	3 0	2 7	2 4	2	1 8	1 5	1 3	1 0	8	5	-	-
64	2 9	2 7	2 4	2 1	1 8	1 5	1 1	9	6	-	-	-	-
62	2 6	2 4	2	1 9	1 5	1 2	8	5	-	-	-	-	-
60	2 3	2	1 9	1 6	1 2	8	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
58	2 0	1 8	1 6	1 3	9	5	ı	ı	-	-	-	-	-
56	1 7	1 5	1 3	1 0	6	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

Table 10-1: Ideal Superheat Values for Different Indoor and Outdoor Conditions

Measur ed Return	Measured Outdoor Condenser Entering Dry-Bulb Temperature											ı	
-Air Wet Bulb	5 5	6	6 5	7 0	7 5	8	8 5	9	9	10 0	10 5	11 0	11 5
54	1 4	1 2	1 0	7	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
52	1 2	1 0	6	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
50	9	7	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	1

#### **Limitations of the Superheat Test**

First, superheat won't be accurate unless airflow is around 400 cfm per ton, so airflow should be measured and improved, if inadequate. Sometimes you can't charge by superheat because of either low or high outdoor temperature. Superheat disappears at high outdoor temperatures, and charge-checking at these temperatures is not recommended. As outdoor temperature rises, system pressures rise, and refrigerant flow rate through the fixed orifice increases until flooding may occur. Therefore, some superheat is desirable, even at high outdoor temperatures to protect the compressor from liquid refrigerant. Providing 1 to 5°F of superheat—even at high outdoor temperatures where superheat values aren't listed—would create a slight undercharge, which would protect the compressor while slightly improving hotweather performance.

#### SUBCOOLING TEST TO ENSURE PROPER CHARGE

Follow manufacturer's instructions for the subcooling test, if available. This test is only to be used for thermal expansion valve (TXV) systems when the outdoor temperature is at least 60°F. The air conditioner or heat pump should be running in the cooling mode for 10 minutes prior to the test.

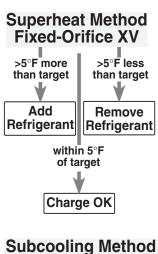
#### **Interpreting Subcooling**

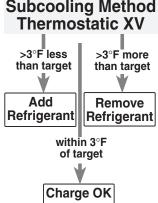
The thermostatic expansion valve is the best available metering device because it varies the orifice size to meet changing indoor and outdoor conditions. It compensates for low airflow and incorrect charge better than fixed orifice expansion valves. With luck, the technician will find a recommendation for subcooling in the manufacturer's literature or on the nameplate or sticker somewhere in the outdoor unit. A subcooling temperature between 10° and 15°F is common for a properly functioning residential air conditioner, but it is better to use manufacturer's specifications for subcooling if they are available.

- 1. Measure the liquid pressure at the liquid service valve. Convert this pressure to the condenser saturation temperature, using temperature-pressure tables for the system's refrigerant.
- 2. Measure the temperature of the liquid refrigerant leaving the condenser.
- 3. Subtract the liquid-refrigerant temperature measured in (2) from the condensing temperature determined in (1). This is the subcooling.
- 4. Find the correct subcooling from the permanent sticker inside the condenser unit, from manufacturer's literature, or from a manufacturer's slide rule. Add refrigerant if the measured subcooling temperature is 3°F or more below the recommendation. Withdraw refrigerant if the subcooling temperature is 3°F or more greater than recommended. Refrigerant must be removed into

an empty DOT-approved recovery cylinder or one containing the same refrigerant as the system.

Allow the system to run for 10 minutes to adjust to the new operating conditions. Repeat the subcooling procedure, until the measured subcooling temperature matches manufacturer's recommendations or is between 10° and 15°F.

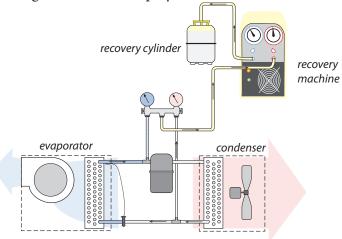




## WEIGH-IN TEST TO ENSURE PROPER REFRIGERANT CHARGE

This is the preferred method of achieving the correct charge. Weigh in refrigerant whenever you are charging:

- New installations,
- Systems where the refrigerant has leaked out,
- To correct refrigerant charge if found to be incorrect after checking superheat or subcooling, or
- To remove existing refrigerant in an EPA-approved manner and recharge the system by weighing in the correct amount of refrigerant whenever superheat or subcooling tests can't be employed.



**Refrigerant recovery.** Most of the refrigerant will flow from the system to a recovery cylinder as a liquid, while being filtered by the recovery machine. The recovery machine can recover the most of the remaining refrigerant as a vapor by pulling a vacuum of 10 inches of mercury.

Follow these procedures to evacuate the existing charge and weigh in the correct one.

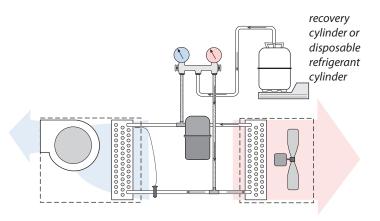
1. Follow the recovery machine's operating instructions for connecting hoses.

- 2. Remove the refrigerant with the recovery machine. The recovery machine should pull a vacuum of at least 10 inches of mercury. Recover the refrigerant into a DOT-approved cylinder, noting the weight of refrigerant recovered and recycled.
- 3. Evacuate the system to 500 microns to remove moisture and impurities, using a vacuum pump.
- 4. Determine the correct charge by reading it from the nameplate. From manufacturer's literature or by contacting a manufacturer's representative, determine the length of lineset that the nameplate charge assumes.
- 5. Accurately measure the unit's installed lineset length. Depending on whether the existing lineset is longer or shorter than the manufacturer's assumed lineset length, add or subtract ounces of refrigerant, based on the manufacturer's specifications of refrigerant ounces per foot of suction and liquid line.
- 6. Connect the EPA-approved recovery cylinder or disposable cylinder to the gauge manifold. Place the cylinder on an electronic scale and zero the scale. During charging, be very careful not to bump or otherwise disturb the scale or cylinder. The scale could reset itself, forcing you to evacuate and start all over.
- 7. To prepare for liquid charging, connect the common port of the gauge manifold to the liquid valve of the recovery cylinder. If using a disposable cylinder, turn the cylinder upside down after connecting the common port to the cylinder valve.
- 8. With the compressor off, open the cylinder's valve and suction service valve, and let the liquid refrigerant flow in.
- 9. If liquid stops flowing before the correct charge has entered, reconfigure the gauge manifold and cylinder to charge with vapor through the suction service valve.

#### Purging refrigerant for a gauge hose

When you connect your high-pressure gauge to the high-pressure liquid service valve, the hose fills with liquid refrigerant. Rather than releasing this refrigerant into the atmosphere or carrying it around to contaminate another system, run it back into the low-pressure suction service valve. Modern hoses hold refrigerant under pressure when they are disconnected, so disconnect the high-pressure hose. Open the common chamber of the gauge set to the suction service valve. Then open the common chamber to the high-pressure hose, slowly letting the liquid refrigerant hiss through the chamber, vaporizing before reaching the low-pressure service valve or nearby compressor.

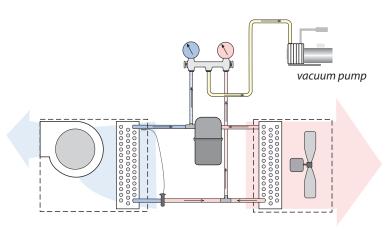
- 10. With the compressor running, add the remaining refrigerant as a vapor. Before opening path between the cylinder and the system, check the low-pressure gauge to make sure the cylinder pressure is higher than the system's suction pressure.
- 11. Weigh in the remainder of the charge.
- 12. Check performance after 10 minutes of operation using superheat test or subcooling test.



**Liquid charging:** Most of the captured refrigerant should flow into the evacuated system as a liquid through the liquid service valve.

#### **Limitations of the Weigh-In Method**

Ideally, the service technician will have the manufacturer's literature, which specifies the lineset length, assumed by the manufacturer, and the amount of refrigerant required for each foot of suction and liquid line. You may also need to know the weight of refrigerant contained in the indoor coil. The weigh-in method can't be performed accurately without this information. Without accurately measuring the lineset length, the weigh-in method can't be performed accurately either. Sometimes, the difficulty of obtaining the manufacturer's specifications makes the weigh-in method a poor choice because just the difference between the manufacturer's choices of linesets (15, 20, and 25 feet) can result in a charge no more accurate than  $\pm 5$ -to-15 ounces, which is unacceptable.

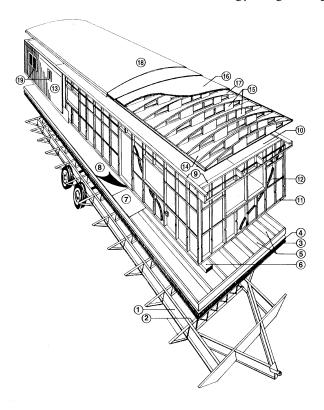


**Vacuum-pump evacuation:** The last remains of the system's refrigerant are vented into the atmosphere along with air and moisture, leaving the system clean and ready for charging.

#### CHAPTER 11: MOBILE HOME STANDARDS

Mobile homes typically use more energy per square foot than site-built homes. Fortunately, their consistent construction makes them more straightforward to weatherize.

Insulation upgrades save the most energy in mobile homes, though sealing shell and duct air leaks presents good opportunities, too. Mobile home heating retrofit and replacement are often cost-effective when a customer's energy usage is high.



Typical Components of a Mobile Home: 1–Steel chassis. 2–Steel outriggers and cross members. 3–Underbelly. 4–Fiberglass insulation. 5–Floor joists. 6–Heating/air conditioning duct. 7–Decking. 8–Floor covering. 9–Top plate. 10–Interior paneling. 11–Bottom plate. 12–Fiberglass insulation. 13–Metal siding. 14–Ceiling board. 15–Bowstring trusses. 16–Fiberglass insulation. 17–Vapor barrier. 18–Galvanized steel one-piece roof. 19–Metal windows.

#### 11.1 MOBILE HOME FURNACES

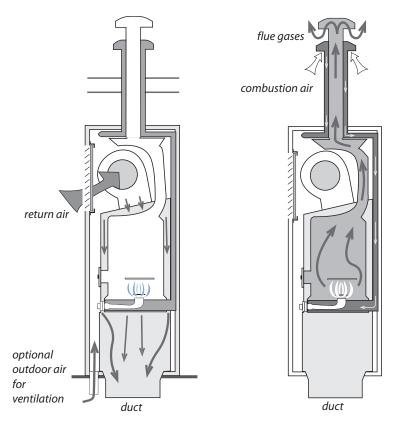
Mobile home furnaces are different from conventional furnaces in several ways.

- A great majority of mobile homes are equipped with downflow furnaces that are designed specifically for mobile homes.
- Mobile home combustion furnaces are sealed-combustion units that use outdoor combustion air, unlike most furnaces in site-built homes. They don't have draft diverters or barometric draft controls.
- Mobile home furnaces require an outdoor source of combustion air.
- Mobile home furnaces have either a manufactured chimney that includes a passageway for combustion air or a combustion-air chute connecting the burner area with the crawl space.
- Gas-fired furnaces have kits attached that contain alternative orifices to burn either propane or natural gas.
- Return air is often supplied to the furnace through a large opening in the furnace cabinet, rather than through ducts connected to the blower compartment.

Mobile home furnaces have been sealed-combustion since the early 1970s. Gas furnaces are either the old atmospheric sealed-combustion type or the newer fan-assisted mid-efficiency type. Some older less-efficient sealed-combustion furnaces had draft fans also.

Mobile home oil furnaces are a close relative to oil furnaces in site-built homes. However, they should have a housing that fits around the burner's air shutter and provides outdoor air directly to the burner.

When replacing mobile home furnaces, install only furnaces designed for mobile homes. Always install the complete chimney and roof jack assembly.



**Mobile home furnace airflow:** Return air flows from the hallway through the furnace grille. The air is heated and distributed through the ducts.

Mobile home furnace combustion: Combustion air enters through the flue assembly on the roof and feeds the flame through a sealed passageway.

#### **FURNACE REPLACEMENT**

Mobile home furnaces should be replaced when any of the following is observed.

- The furnace has a heat exchanger which is cracked or rusted through.
- Repair and retrofit exceed half of the replacement cost.
- The furnace is not operating and not repairable.

Mobile home furnaces must be replaced by furnaces designed and listed for use in mobile homes. If a heat exchanger is available to replace the existing cracked heat exchanger, consider heat-exchanger replacement as a repair priority instead of replacing the furnace.

Follow these procedures when installing new mobile home furnaces.

- ✓ Upgrade the furnace compartment if needed to comply with fire codes.
- ✓ Install a new furnace base unless you are sure that the existing base exactly matches the new furnace.
- ✓ Attach the furnace base firmly to the duct, and seal all seams between the base and duct with mastic and fabric tape before installing the furnace.
- ✓ Support the main duct underneath the furnace with additional strapping if necessary.
- Confirm that the home's thermostat is installed on an inside wall and away from drafts, direct heat sources, or direct sunlight.

#### MOBILE-HOME FURNACE VENTING

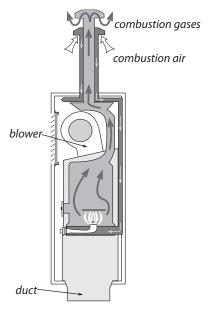
Mobile-home furnaces are direct-vented, sealed-combustion units that require an outdoor source of combustion air. Mobile-home furnaces may be atmospheric (no draft fan) or fan-assisted. The fan may draw combustion air from a concentric space created by the double-wall chimney or from a duct connected to the ventilated crawl space. Mobile-home furnaces

often have a manufactured chimney that includes a passageway for admitting outdoor combustion air supply.

Consider replacing the existing furnace with a sealed-combustion, downflow, condensing furnace. These positive-draft furnaces may eliminate venting and combustion-air problems, common to mobile home furnaces, because of their robust positive draft and negatively pressurized combustion-air vent.

Observe these guidelines for installing mobile home furnace vents.

- ✓ Note the differences between old and new furnace in the way each is supplied with combustion air.
- ✓ Install a new chimnev that is manufactured specifically for the new furnace. Mobile home furnaces have short chimneys, and their combustion process depends on a delicate balance between combustion air entering and combustion gases leaving. Many callbacks are caused by chimney and chimneycap alignment.



Mobile home furnace venting: Mobile home chimneys and chimney caps must be installed perfectly vertical and the cap must be securely attached to avoid venting problems and tripping of the pressure switch.

✓ If the new chimney doesn't exactly line up with the old chimney opening, cut the opening large enough to allow the new chimney to be installed absolutely vertical. Install a ceiling plate to seal the new opening to the

chimney. Make sure the chimney cap is installed absolutely level.

#### 11.2 MOBILE HOME AIR SEALING

The location and relative importance of mobile home air leaks was a mystery before blower doors. Some mobile homes are fairly airtight, yet many are incredibly leaky. It's recommended that a blower door be used to guide air-sealing work and to check Building Tightness Limit in mobile homes. See page 118.

For assessing mobile home duct tightness, the blower door used in conjunction with a pressure pan does a good job of detecting air leaks.

Most mobile home duct sealing is performed through the belly. This work is more difficult once the belly has been re-insulated. Inspect the ductwork and seal any major leaks, such as disconnected trunk lines, before insulating the belly.

Table 11-1: Air sealing locations & typical CFM<sub>50</sub> reduction

Air-Sealing Procedure	Typical CFM <sub>50</sub> Reduction
Patching large air leaks in the floor, walls and ceiling	200-900
Sealing floor as return-air plenum	300-900
Sealing leaky water-heater closet	200-600
Sealing leaky supply ducts	100-500
Installing tight interior storm windows	100-250
Caulking and weatherstripping	50-150

Mobile home shell air leakage is often substantially reduced when insulation is installed in roofs, walls, and belly cavities. Prioritize your efforts by performing these tasks in this order.

- 1. Assess the insulation levels. If adding insulation is costeffective, perform the usual pre-insulation sealing measures that control the travel of insulation.
- 2. Install cavity insulation. Perform duct sealing first if the belly is to be insulated.
- 3. Re-check the air leakage rate.
- 4. Perform additional air sealing as needed.

#### SHELL AIR-LEAKAGE LOCATIONS

The following shell locations have been identified by technicians using blower doors as the most serious air-leakage sites. Note that window and door air leakage are more of a comfort problem than a serious energy problem.

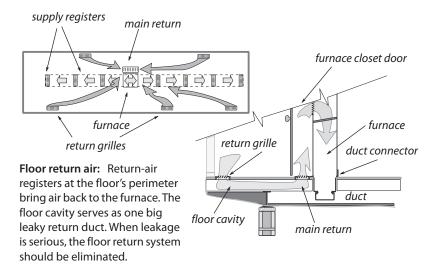
- Plumbing penetrations in floors, walls, and ceilings.
   Water-heater closets with exterior doors are particularly serious air-leakage problems, having large openings into the bathroom and other areas.
- Torn or missing underbelly, exposing flaws in the floor to the ventilated crawl space.
- Large gaps around furnace and water heater chimneys.
- Severely deteriorated floors in water heater compartments.
- Gaps around the electrical service panel box, light fixtures, and fans.
- Joints between the halves of doublewide mobile homes and between the main dwelling and additions.

#### **DUCT-LEAK LOCATIONS**

The following duct locations have been identified by technicians using blower doors and duct testers as the most serious energy problems.

- Floor and ceiling cavities used as return-air plenums.
   These return systems should be eliminated in favor of return-air through the hall or a large grille in the furnace-closet door.
- Joints between the furnace and the main duct. The main duct may need to be cut open from underneath to access and seal these leaks between the furnace, duct connector, and main duct. With electric furnaces you can access the duct connector by removing the bank of resistance elements. For furnaces with empty A-coil compartments, you can simply remove the access panel to access the duct connector.
- Joints between the main duct and the short duct sections joining the main duct to a floor register.
- Joints between register boots and floor.
- The poorly sealed end of the duct trunk.
- Disconnected, damaged or poorly joined crossover ducts.
- Supply and return ducts for outdoor air conditioner units.
- Holes cut in floors by tradesmen.
- New ductwork added to supply heat to room additions.

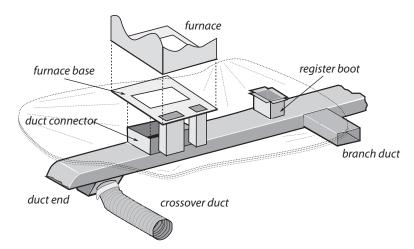
Be sure to seal floor penetrations and ductwork before performing any belly repair. Pollutants in the crawl space such as mold, mildew, and fiberglass will be disturbed by repair work, and can be drawn into the home by duct depressurization.



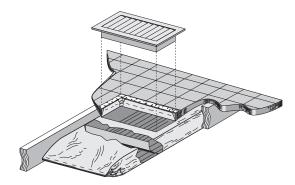
#### **BELLY PRESSURE TEST**

Mobile home supply duct leaks tend to pressurize the belly cavity. This rough test can quickly determine if duct leaks are present and their general location.

- ✔ Repair the rodent barrier.
- ✓ Turn on the air handler.
- ✓ Insert a manometer hose into the belly through the rodent barrier, and test the pressure with-reference-to the outdoors.
- ✓ Start near the furnace, and work your way toward the ends alongside the trunk line. A pressure rise will give you a rough idea of the location of leaks, size of leaks, and tightness of the nearby rodent barrier.
- ✔ Repair the ducts and re-test



Mobile home ducts: Mobile home ducts leak at their ends and joints— especially at the joints beneath the furnace. The furnace base attaches the furnace to the duct connector. Leaks occur where the duct connector meets the main duct and where it meets the furnace. Branch ducts are rare, but easy to find, because their supply register isn't in line with the others. Crossover ducts are found only in double-wide and triple-wide homes.)



**Sealing the end of the main duct:** The main duct is usually capped or crimped loosely at each end, creating a major air leakage point. Seal this area and improve airflow by installing a sheet metal ramp, accessed through the last register, inside the duct. Seal the ramp to the ductwork with metal tape and silicone or mastic.

#### 11.3 MOBILE HOME INSULATION

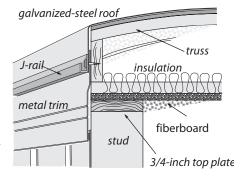
Effective methods for insulating mobile homes have been developed by many weatherization agencies. If your crew is trained in these methods, use the following standards for floor and ceiling insulation.

Address all significant moisture problems before insulating. The most important single moisture-control measure is installing a ground-moisture barrier.

#### **BLOWING MOBILE HOME ROOF CAVITIES**

Blowing a closed mobile home roof cavity is similar to blowing a closed wall cavity, only the insulation doesn't have to be as dense. Fiberglass blowing wool is used since cellulose is too heavy and absorbs water too readily for use around a mobile home's lightweight sheeting materials.

There are three common and effective methods for blowing mobile home roof



**Bowstring roof details:** Hundreds of thousands of older mobile homes were constructed with these general construction details.

cavities. The first is cutting a square hole in the metal roof and blowing fiberglass through a flexible fill-tube. The second is disconnecting the metal roof at its edge and blowing fiberglass through a rigid fill-tube. The third involves blowing fiberglass through holes drilled in the ceiling.

#### Preparing to blow a mobile home roof

Perform these steps before insulating mobile home roofs.

✔ Reinforce weak areas in the ceiling.

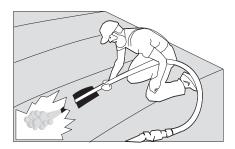
- Inspect the ceiling and seal all penetrations.
- ✓ Take steps to maintain safe clearances between insulation and recessed light fixtures and ceiling fans.

#### Blowing through the top

This approach fills the critical edge area with insulation, and the patches are easy to install if you have the right materials. It is important to complete the work during good weather, however, since the roof will be vulnerable to rain or snow during the job.

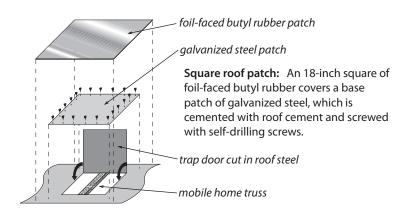
If the roof contains a strongback running the length of the roof, the holes should be centered over the strongback, which is usually near the center of the roof's width. A strongback is a 1-by-4 or a 1-by-6, installed at a right angle to the trusses near their center point, that adds strength to the roof structure.

- 1. Cut 10-inch square holes at the roof's apex on top of every second truss. Each square hole permits access to two truss cavities.
- 2. Use a 2-inch or 2-1/<sub>2</sub>-inch diameter fill-tube. Insert the fill-tube and push it forcefully out toward the edge of the cavity.
- 3. Blow fiberglass insulation into each cavity.
- 4. Stuff the area under each square hole with a piece of unfaced fiberglass batt so that the finished roof patch will stand a little higher than the surrounding roof.



**Roof-top insulation:** Blowing fiberglass insulation through the roof top is effective at achieving good coverage and density on almost any metal roof.

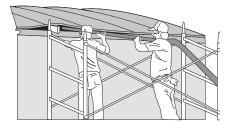
- 5. Patch the hole with a 14-inch-square piece of stiff galvanized steel, sealed with roof cement and screwed into the existing metal roof.
- 6. Cover the first patch with a second patch, consisting of an 18-inch-square piece of foil-faced butyl rubber.



#### Blowing a mobile home roof from the edge

This procedure requires scaffold to be performed safely and efficiently. Mobile home metal roofs are usually fastened only at the edge, where the roof joins the wall.

1. Remove the screws from the metal j-rail at the roof edge. Also remove staples or other fasteners, and scrape off putty tape.



Roof-edge blowing: Use a rigid fill tube to blow insulation through the roof edge. This avoids making holes in the roof itself, though this process requires much care in refastening the roof edge.

2. Pry the metal roof up far enough to insert a 2-inch-diameter, 10- to 14-foot-long rigid fill-tube. Two common choices are steel muffler pipe and aluminum irrigation pipe. Inspect the cavity with a bright light to

identify any wires or piping that could be damaged by the fill tube.

- 3. Blow insulation through the fill-tube into the cavity. Turn down the air on the blowing machine when the tube is a couple feet from the roof edge, in order to avoid blowing insulation out through the opening in the roof edge. Or stop blowing a foot or two from the edge, and stuff the last foot or two with unfaced fiberglass batts.
- 4. Fasten the roof edge back to the wall using galvanized roofing nails, a new metal j-rail, new putty tape, and larger screws. The ideal way to re-fasten the metal roof edge is with air-driven galvanized staples, which is the way most roof edges were attached originally.

Note that re-installation of the roof edge is the most important part of this procedure. Putty tape must be replaced and installed as it was originally. This usually involves installing a layer of putty tape or a bead of high quality caulk under the metal roof and another between the metal roof edge and the j-rail.

The advantages of blowing through the edge is that if you have the right tools, including a powered stapler, this method can be very fast and doesn't require cutting into the roof. The disadvantages of this procedure are that you need scaffolding to work at the edges, and it won't work on roof systems with a central strongback that stops the fill tube from reaching all the way across the roof.

#### Blowing a mobile home roof from indoors

The advantage to this method is that you are indoors, out of the weather. The disadvantages include being indoors where you can make a mess—or worse, damage something.

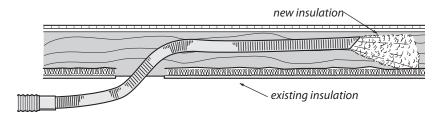
This procedure requires the drilling of straight rows of 3-inch or 4-inch holes and blowing insulation into the roof cavity through a fill tube.

#### Follow this procedure.

- 1. Drill a 3-inch or 4-inch hole in an unseen location to discover whether the roof structure contains a strongback that would prevent blowing the roof cavity from a single row of holes.
- 2. Devise a way to drill a straight row of holes down the center of the ceiling. If a strongback exists, drill two rows of holes at the quarter points of the width of the ceiling.
- 3. Insert a flexible plastic fill tube into the cavity, and push it as far as possible toward the edge of the roof.
- 4. Fill the cavity with tightly packed fiberglass insulation.
- 5. Cap the holes with manufactured plastic caps. Care must be taken not to damage the holes so that the plastic hole covers fit properly. You can also install a piece of painted wood trim over the line of holes.

#### MOBILE HOME FLOOR INSULATION

Mobile home floor insulation is a good energy-saving measure in cool climates. The original insulation is usually fastened to the bottom of the floor joists, leaving much of the cavity uninsulated and subject to convection currents. This greatly reduces the insulation's R-value. Blown-in belly insulation also tends to control duct leakage.



**Blowing bellies:** A flexible fill-tube, which is significantly stiffer than the blower hose, blows fiberglass insulation through a hole in the belly from underneath the home.

#### Preparing for mobile home floor insulation

Prior to installing floor insulation, always perform these repairs.

- ✔ Repair plumbing leaks.
- ✓ Tightly seal all holes in the floor.
- Inspect and seal ducts.
- ✔ Repair the rodent barrier.
- ✓ Install a ground-moisture barrier in the crawl space if the site is wet.

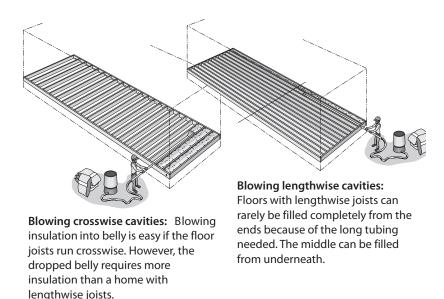
#### Insulating the floor

Two methods of insulating mobile home floors are common. The first is drilling through the 2-by-6 rim joist and blowing fiberglass through a rigid fill tube. The second is blowing fiberglass insulation through a flexible fill tube from holes in the underbelly. Blown fiberglass is recommended over cellulose for either method.

First repair all holes in the belly. Use mobile home belly-paper, silicone sealant, and stitch staples. Use these same patches over the holes cut for fill-tubes. Screw wood lath over weak areas if needed.

When blowing through holes from underneath the home, consider blowing through damaged areas before patching them.

Identify any plumbing lines, and avoid installing insulation between them and the living space if freezing could be an issue. This may require running a piece of belly-paper under the pipes, and insulating the resulting cavity, to include them in the heated envelope of the home.



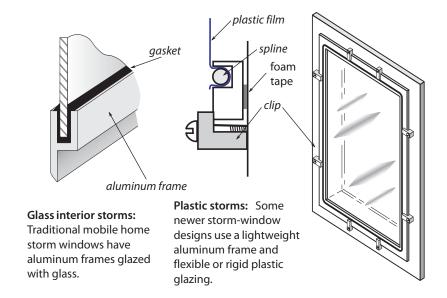
Unfaced fiberglass batts may also be used to insulate floor sections where the insulation and belly are missing. The insulation should be supported by lath, twine, or insulation supports. This is a good approach when it is not cost-effective to insulate the entire belly.

#### 11.4 MOBILE HOME WINDOWS AND DOORS

Replacing windows and doors is generally not cost-effective and should only be done if repairs cannot hold the window or door together any longer.

New jalousie or awning windows are not acceptable as replacements because of their high infiltration rates. Replacement windows with an emergency release are available, and these should be used when replacing windows in bedrooms.

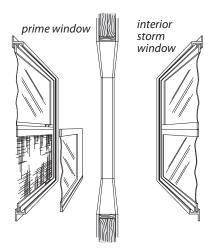
#### MOBILE HOME STORM WINDOWS



Interior storm windows are common in mobile homes. These stationary interior storms serve awning and jalousie windows. Sliding interior storm windows pair with exterior sliding prime windows.

- Interior storm windows double the R-value of a singlepane window. They also reduce infiltration, especially in the case of leaky jalousie prime windows.
- Avoid replacing existing storm windows unless the existing storm windows cannot be re-glazed or repaired.

 When sliding primary windows are installed, use a sliding storm window that slides from the same side as the primary window. Sliding storm windows stay in place and aren't removed seasonally, and are therefore less likely to be lost or broken.



# REPLACING MOBILE HOME WINDOWS

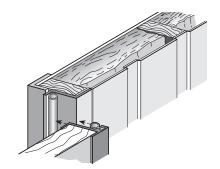
Mobile home double window: In mobile homes, the prime window is installed over the siding outdoors, and the storm window is installed indoors.

Inspect condition of rough opening members before replacing windows. Replace deteriorated, weak, or waterlogged framing members.

Prepare replacement window by lining the perimeter of the inner lip with  $^1/_8$ -inch thick putty tape. Caulk exterior window frame perimeter to wall after installing window.

#### **MOBILE HOME DOORS**

Mobile home doors come in two basic types: the mobile home door and the house-type door. Mobile home doors swing outwardly, and house-type doors swing inwardly. Door replacement is an allowable expense only when the existing door is damaged beyond repair and constitutes a severe air-leakage problem.



**Mobile home door:** Mobile home doors swing outwardly and have integral weatherstrip.

#### 11.5 COOL ROOFS FOR MOBILE HOMES

Cool roof coatings reduce summer cooling costs and improve comfort by reflecting solar energy away from the home's roof and slowing the flow of heat into the home. They are shown to reduce overall cooling costs by 10-70%, and are a good choice for mobile homes or site-built homes with low slope or flat roofs. Cool roof coatings are usually bright white, and must have a reflectivity of at least 60% to meet the ENERGY STAR requirement for cool roof coatings.

Cool roof coatings are usually water-based acrylic elastomers, and are applied with a roller. They can be applied over most low-sloped roofing materials such as metal, built-up asphalt, bitumen, or single ply membranes. Some underlying materials require a primer to get proper adhesion-check the manufacturer's recommended over asphalt-shingle roofs.

Surface preparation is critical when applying any coating. The underlying roofing materials must be clean so the coating will stick. Repairs should be performed if the existing roofing is cracked or blistered. Roof coating will not stick to dirty or greasy surfaces, and they cannot be used to repair roofs in poor

conditions. Observe the following specifications when installing cool roof coatings.

- Clean the roof of debris such as dirt, leaves, and loose or detached roofing material.
- ✓ Wash the roof with water/trisodium phosphate (tsp) solution, or comparable mildewcide, and a scrub brush. Better yet use a pressure washer.
- Buy the highest quality materials, and look for those that are specifically formulated as mobile home roof coatings.
- ✓ Reinforce any open joints around skylights, pipe flashing, roof drains, wall transitions, or HVAC equipment. For built-up asphalt or bitumen roofs, repair any cracks, blisters, or de-laminations. Use polyester fabric and roof coating for these reinforcements and repairs by dipping fabric patches in the roof coating and spreading them over the existing roofing, or by laying dry fabric into a layer of wet coating. Smooth the patch downs with a broad-knife or squeegees to remove bubbles or wrinkles. Allow any repairs to cure for 1 to 2 days before applying the topcoat.
- ✓ For metal roofs, sand any rusted areas down to sound metal. Install metal patches over any areas that are rusted through, followed by polyester patches as described above.
- ✓ Prime uncoated galvanized iron with the appropriate primer and ferrous metals with the appropriate primer.
- ✓ Install the coating when dry weather is predicted. Rain heavy dew, or freezing weather, if it happens within 24 hours of installation, will weaken the coating's bond to the underlying roofing.
- ✓ Protect any nearby windows, siding, or automobiles from splatters. For roller application, use a large brush for the edges, and a shaggy 1 to  $1^{1}/_{2}$ -inch roller on a 5-

or 6- foot pole for the field. Run the coating up the roof jacks and other penetrations to help seal these areas. Install at least two coats, with second coat applied in the opposite direction to the first to get more complete coverage. Allow a day for drying between coats.

#### 11.6 MOBILE HOME SKIRTING

The primary purpose of skirting is to keep animals out of the crawl space. Skirting must be vented to reduce moisture accumulation in many climates, so there isn't much value in insulating it.

Installation and repair of mobile home skirting is seldom costeffective. Try to locate the thermal boundary at the floor of mobile homes.

## A-1 APPENDICES

Tools for Air Sealing and Insulating	306
Tools for Auditing and Mechanical	307
Weatherization Materials	308
R-values for Common Materials	309
Resources	310

# A-2 Tools for Air Sealing and Insulating

	·
Insulation blower	Broom and dust pan
Blower hoses 4, 3, & 2.5 inch	Cat's paw
Fill tubes and hose fittings	Caulking guns
Coveralls and gloves	Chisels: cold and wood
First-aid kit	Cleaning fluid and rags
Hard hat	End nippers
Respirators and filters	Flashlight
Safety glasses	Hack saw and blades
Ext. ladders, leveler, & hooks	Hammers and wrecking bars
Portable lights	Hand saws
Scaffold, planks, and handrail	Hand staplers
Step ladders: 4, 6, & 8 foot	Metal & Vinyl-siding zip tools
Circular saw with blades	Mirror
Compressor and power stapler	Pliers: electrical & slip-joint
Drill index with bits	Putty knives and scrapers
Drills, drivers, and bits	Putty warmer
Extension cords	Scratch awl and pin punches
HEPA vacuum with attachments	Steel tape measures
Lead paint drill shroud	Screw drivers and nut drivers
Reciprocating saw with blades	Squares: frame, combo, drywall
Shop vacuum, hoses, attachments	Tin snips: hand and electric

## A-3 Tools for Auditing and Mechanical

Coveralls and gloves	Clipboard box, writing supplies, pencils
Safety glasses	Steel tape measures
Blower door	Adjustable wrenches
Digital manometer with hoses	Cold chisels and wood chisels
Pressure pan	Flash lights and portable lights
Heat-exchanger test kit	Flexduct strap tightener
Digital combustion analyzer	Hack saw and blades
Digital CO detector	Inspection mirror
Digital thermometer with ΔT	Pipe wrenches
Moisture meter	Pliers: electrical & slip-joint
Remote viewer	Screw drivers, nut drivers, and bits
Non-contact voltage detector	Sheet-metal crimper
Volt-ohmmeter	Tin snips
Recording watthour meter	Sockets and ratchet
Plug-in circuit tester	Wire and bristle brushes
Wire strippers	Cordless drill-driver
Auditing software	Drill index with bits
Calculator	Hand truck

## **A-4 WEATHERIZATION MATERIALS**

Cellulose	Assorted wire nuts and electri-
Closed-cell foam tape	Compact fluorescent lamps
Fiberglass batts	Energy-saving shower heads
Fiberglass blowing wool	Programmable thermostats
Fiberglass duct wrap	Replacement fan controls
Foam backer rod	Replacement furnaces
Foam pipe sleeves	Replacement refrigerators
One-part squirt foam	Replacement water heaters
Sheet foam insulation	1/4-inch plywood or hardboard
Two-part spray foam	Assorted lumber
Water heater insulation	Assorted screws and nails
Assorted chimney pipe	Assorted staples
Assorted furnace filters	Construction adhesive
Duct mastic and web tape	Disposable coveralls, boot cov-
Duct tape and electrical tape	Disposable paint brushes
Furnace filter material	Plastic garbage bags
Proper vents	Plastic sheeting
Sheet metal	Pop riveter
Acoustical sealant	Putty tape
Bronze v-seal weatherstrip	Silicone or urethane caulk
Jamb-up weatherstrip	Siliconized acrylic-latex caulk
Client-education booklets	Portable tape recorder

## A-5 R-VALUES FOR COMMON MATERIALS

Material	R-value
Fiberglass or rock wool batts and blown 1"	2.8-4.0 <sup>a</sup>
Blown cellulose 1"	3.0-4.0 <sup>b</sup>
Vermiculite loose fill 1"	2.7
White expanded polystyrene foam (beadboard) 1"	3.9-4.3 <sup>a</sup>
Polyurethane/polyisocyanurate foam 1"	6.2-7.0 <sup>c</sup>
Extruded polystyrene (blue, yellow or pink) 1"	5.0
Oriented strand board (OSB) or plywood $^{1}/_{2}^{"}$	1.6
Concrete 1"	0.1
Wood 1"	1.0 <sup>d</sup>
Fired clay bricks 1"	0.1-0.4
Gypsum or plasterboard $^{1}/_{2}^{"}$	0.4
Single pane glass	0.9
Low-e insulated glass	3.3–4.2 <sup>e</sup>
Triple glazed glass with 2 low-e coatings	8.3

- a. Varies according to density (increases with increasing density).
- b. Varies according to density (decreases with increasing density).
- c. Varies according to age and formulation.
- d. Varies by species.
- e. Varies according to Solar Heat Gain Coefficient (SHGC) rating.

#### A-6 RESOURCES

ASHRAE 1993 Fundamentals, American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air Conditioning Engineers, Inc; Atlanta GA 1993

Builder's Guide: Cold Climates and Builder's Guide: Hot-Humid Climates, by Joe Lstiburek, Building Science Corporation, 2000

Insulate and Weatherize, by Bruce Harley, Taunton Press, 2002

Lead-Safe Weatherization, A Training and Reference Manual for Weatherization Managers and Crews, by Montana State University Extension Service, 2003

MWX90: Minnesota Low Income Weatherization Procedure for the 1990s, by Lester Shen, December 1993, Underground Space Center

Residential Energy: Cost Savings and Comfort for Existing Buildings, by John Krigger and Chris Dorsi, Fourth Edition, 2004

Your Mobile Home: Energy and Repair Guide for Manufactured Housing, by John Krigger, Fourth Edition, 1998

# **LIST OF TABLES AND ILLUSTRATIONS**

# **Health and Safety**

Effects of CO	15
Moisture sources	
Moisture sources and their potential contributions	19
Dust mites	
Stopping water intrusion	
Dehumidifiers	
Protective tarp	24
Knob-and-Tube Wiring	
Safety education	27
New hire	
Safe vehicles	29
Awkward loads	30
Personal protective equipment	32
Ladders	
Good housekeeping	34
Electrical safety	35
· ·	
•	
Auditing, Education, and Baseload Me	easures
Auditing, Education, and Baseload Me	
Improvable baseload and seasonal energy uses	38
Improvable baseload and seasonal energy uses Heating energy waste	38
Improvable baseload and seasonal energy uses Heating energy waste	38 39 39
Improvable baseload and seasonal energy uses  Heating energy waste	38 39 39 46
Improvable baseload and seasonal energy uses  Heating energy waste	38 39 46 47
Improvable baseload and seasonal energy uses Heating energy waste	38 39 46 47
Improvable baseload and seasonal energy uses Heating energy waste	
Improvable baseload and seasonal energy uses Heating energy waste Water-heating energy waste Reach for the cold water tap Modern dryer dial Clothes line Circulating fans Ventilating fans	
Improvable baseload and seasonal energy uses Heating energy waste	
Improvable baseload and seasonal energy uses Heating energy waste Water-heating energy waste Reach for the cold water tap Modern dryer dial Clothes line Circulating fans Ventilating fans	
Improvable baseload and seasonal energy uses Heating energy waste	
Improvable baseload and seasonal energy uses Heating energy waste	
Improvable baseload and seasonal energy uses Heating energy waste	

Compact fluorescent lamps	56
Air Sealing and Insulating	
Thermal boundary flaws	59
Porch air leakage	62
Kitchen soffits	63
Two-level attic	
Balloon-framed interior walls	
Recessed light fixtures	
Large holes	
Backer rod	
S-type fuse	
Recessed light fixtures	
Soffit chute or dam	
Insulated attic hatch	
Low and high attic ventilation	
Insulation blowing coverage chart	
Blown-in attic insulation	
Finished attic	
Finished attic best practices	
Insulating and sealing attic stair walls, doors, and stairs Insulating and weatherstripping the attic hatch	
Manufactured retractable-stair cover	
Problems with low density insulation	
Removing asbestos shingles	
Removing metal siding	
Tube-filling walls	
Insulation hoses, fittings, and the fill tube	
Balloon framing	
Fiberglass batts, compressed by a cable	
Batt, split around a cable	
Foam-insulated rim joists	
Floor insulating with batts	
Foam-insulated crawl space	
·	

Refrigerator consumption example ....... 55

Diagnosing Shell & Duct Air LeakageQuestions to ask during the audit108Blower door components110Standard blower door test111Digital manometers112Blower door analog gauges113Can't-Reach-Fifty Factors116Air-leakage targets117Height-Corrected N-Factors for Missouri119Blower door test121Building components and their air permeance122Interior door test123Bedroom test124Pressure-testing building zones125House-to-attic pressure127Attic-to-outdoors pressure127Cantilevered floor test128Porch roof test128Zone connectedness128Pressure measurements and air-barrier location129Open-a-door test135Open-a-door test135Open-a-door test135	Fiberglass crawl-space insulation 2-inch foam board with plywood strips. 2-part foam sprayed on rubble masonry. Sun screens Trees for shade Aluminum exterior storm windows. Weatherstripping double-hung windows Weatherstripping doors Minor door repair.	. 93 . 93 . 96 . 99 100 101 104
Blower door components 110 Standard blower door test 111 Digital manometers 112 Blower door analog gauges 113 Can't-Reach-Fifty Factors 116 Air-leakage targets 117 Height-Corrected N-Factors for Missouri 119 Blower door test 121 Building components and their air permeance 122 Interior door test 123 Bedroom test 124 Pressure-testing building zones 125 House-to-attic pressure 127 Cantilevered floor test 128 Porch roof test 128 Porch roof test 128 Zone connectedness 128 Pressure measurements and air-barrier location 129 Open-a-door test 2 135	Diagnosing Shell & Duct Air Leakage	
House-to-crawl-space pressure	Blower door components Standard blower door test Digital manometers Blower door analog gauges Can't-Reach-Fifty Factors Air-leakage targets Height-Corrected N-Factors for Missouri Blower door test Building components and their air permeance Interior door test Bedroom test Pressure-testing building zones House-to-attic pressure Attic-to-outdoors pressure Cantilevered floor test Porch roof test. Zone connectedness Pressure measurements and air-barrier location Open-a-door test Open-a-door test 2 Open-a-door CFM50 leakage. House-to-crawl-space pressure	110 111 112 113 116 117 119 121 122 123 124 125 127 127 128 128 128 128 129 135 135 136 137

A pressure pan
Dominant supply leaks
Compiled Research Results: Field Studies on HVAC Performance
Combustion Safety and Efficiency Testing

# Draft, Venting, and Combustion Air

Negative versus positive draft	175
Flame roll-out	177
Worst-case draft testing	177
Worst-case depressurization	178
Acceptable Draft Test Ranges	179
Acceptable Appliance Spillage Periods	180
Combustion Safety Test Action Levels	181
CAZ Depressurization Limits	182
Draft Problems and Solutions	183
Guide to Venting Standards	185
Areas of Round Vents	187
Two vent connectors joining chimney	187
Vent Connector Diam. vs. Max. Horiz. Length	
Clearances to Combustibles for Vent Connectors	188
Masonry chimneys	188
Clearances to Combustibles for Common Chimneys	189
All-fuel metal chimney	190
Chimney terminations	191
Roof Slope and B-Vent Chimney Height (ft.)	191
Flexible metal chimney liners	192
AGA venting categories	193
B-vent chimney liner	194
Characteristics of Gas Furnaces and Boilers	
Fan-assisted gas heaters with vertical chimneys	196
Fan-assisted heaters with sidewall vents	196
Condensing furnace venting	197
Power venters	
Wood-stove installation	
CFM Requirements for Combustion Furnaces or Boilers .	202
Passive combustion-air options	
Combustion Air Openings: Location and Size	
Sealed combustion	
Fan-powered combustion air	207

# **Replacement Specs and Hydronic Heating**

Oil-fired downflow furnaces	. 209
Sealed combustion heaters	. 210
80+ gas furnace	. 211
90+ gas furnace	. 211
Static pressure and temperature rise	. 212
Oil heating system	. 213
Combustion Standards for Gas-Burning Furnaces	. 215
Cast-iron sectional boilers	
Purging air	. 218
Vent dampers	. 219
One-pipe and two-pipe steam systems	
Two-pipe steam systems	
Steam traps	
Wall-hung boiler	
Simple reverse-return hot-water system	
Reset controller	
Electric baseboard	
Electric furnace	
Is strip heat activated?	
Heat pump	
Installing Room Heat Pumps of Air Conditioners	
3	
Francis At a Control of Control	
Forced-Air System Standards	
Furnace Operating Parameters	234
Adjustable drive pulley	
A fan/limit control	
Testing ducts before air-handler installation	
Total duct air leakage measured by the duct blower	
Measuring duct leakage to outdoors	
A pressure pan	
Pressure-pan test	
•	
Problem register	
Finding duct air leaks	. 242

43 44 45 45 46 47 48 55 56 56 56 56 56 56 56 56 56 56 56 56
,,,
75 79 81 82
444455555555555555

## **Mobile Home Standards**

Typical Components of a Mobile Home
Mobile home furnace airflow
Mobile home furnace combustion 285
Mobile home furnace venting
Air sealing locations & typical CFM <sub>50</sub> reduction 288
Floor return air
Mobile home ducts
Sealing the end of the main duct
Bowstring roof details
Roof-top insulation
Square roof patch
Roof-edge blowing
Blowing bellies
Blowing crosswise cavities
Blowing lengthwise cavities
Glass interior storms 300
Plastic storms
Mobile home double window301
Mobile home door

## INDEX

Α		improving low measuring	247 252-260
Add-a-hole test	130-131	studies	252-260
AFUE	100 101	Alarms	202
See also Annual Fuel U	tilization	carbon monoxide	16
Efficiency	223	smoke	16
Air barriers		American Gas Association	1
add-a-hole test	130-131	venting categories	193
air permeance of	122	Annual Fuel Utilization E	fficiency
definition	122	(AFUE)	193, 214
primary vs. secondary	123	Asbestos	31
testing for leaks	121-131	Attics	
testing with manomete	rs125-131	hatches	65
Air conditioners		insulation	70-80
coil cleaning	266-270	ventilation	71-72
maintenance	266-270	В	
room, maintaining	267	<u> </u>	
Air filters		Backdrafting	175-183
maintenance	248-249	Balloon framing	86
oil burner	169	Band joists	00
Air handlers		insulation	89-90
and house pressures	145-147	Barometric dampers 166	
sealing holes in	212	Basements	, 100, 170
Air leakage		insulation and air-sealing	nσ 91-93
duct testing	139-144	thermal boundary	137-139
of materials, rates	122	Blower doors	10, 10,
sealing	60-67	airtightness limits	118-120
when to test	109	analog gauges	113
Air leaks		components/descriptio	n 109-111
general types	60	preparing for tests	113-114
Air permeance		pressure diagnostics	121-131
of building materials	122	simple zone testing	123-125
Air quality. See Indoor air		subtraction test	142-144
Air sealing	60-67	testing air barriers	125-131
mobile homes	288-289	testing ducts with	139-144
with foam	89-93	Blower-door subtraction	142-144
Air shutters, oil	170	Blowers	
Airflow	252	continuous operation	212
blower speed	253	maintenance	248-249
dry & wet climates	252		

installation   222-225   when to reline   193	Boilers		types	188
Sizing   223   Combustion   167   167   177	installation	222-225	when to reline	193
Building tightness limits   118-120 mobile homes   288	low-limit control	218	CO. See Carbon monoxid	e
mobile homes         288         safety and efficiency         157-172           Burners         157-172         sealed         209           combustion air to         207         testing gas ranges         165           gan-type oil         177         combustion air         184, 201-207           nozzle for oil         169         and mobile-home furnaces         286           oil         166-172         cfm requirements         202           power         177, 207         combined with power vent         207           Bypasses         61-66         comfined spaces         203-205           Guactell         169         methods of providing         203           Carbon monoxide         14, 14-16         alarms         16         combustion chamber         207           Carbon monoxide         14, 14-16         alarms         16         combustion chamber         171           Causes of         16         caysoure limits         15         standard for oil         160, 167, 215         combustion testing         gas ranges         165           Caulking         288         interior cracks         67         combustion chamber         171           Chimneys         63-67         67	sizing	223	Combustion	
Burners	Building tightness limits	118-120	oil standards	167
combustion air to gas, servicing gas, servicing gas, servicing gun-type oil         157-164 the chemical process         157           gun-type oil         177 nozzle for oil         169 and mobile-home furnaces         286           oil         166-172 power         177, 207 combustion air         184, 201-207 and mobile-home furnaces         286           bypasses         61-66         cfm requirements         202           C         203-205         direct to burner         207           6 Can't reach fifty         116         and mobile home furnaces         203-205           6 Can't reach fifty         116         and mobile home furnaces         203-205           6 Can't reach fifty         116         and mobile home furnaces         203-205           6 Can't reach fifty         116         and mobile home furnaces         204           6 Carbon monoxide         14, 14-16         and mobile home furnaces         284           6 Carbon monoxide         14, 14-16         and mobile home furnaces         284           6 Carbon monoxide         14, 14-16         and mobile home furnaces         284           6 Carbon monoxide         160, 167, 215         and mobile home furnaces         284           6 Canulking         283         ang gases         159	mobile homes	288	safety and efficiency	157-172
gas, servicing gun-type oil 177   169   169   169   169   160   166-172   177   207   208   209	Burners	157-172	sealed	209
gun-type oil         177         Combustion air         184, 201-207           nozzle for oil         169         and mobile-home furnaces         286           oil         166-172         cfm requirements         202           power         177, 207         combined with power vent         207           Bypasses         61-66         confined spaces         203-205           direct to burner         207           fan-powered         207           fan-powered         207           fan-powered         203           carbon monoxide         14, 14-16         alarms         16           causes of         16         combustion chamber         171           Combustion chamber         171         Combustion zone         Combustion zone           defined         111         Consumption         of energy         38-39           Cooling         A/C maint	combustion air to	207	testing gas ranges	165
mozzle for oil	gas, servicing	157-164	the chemical process	157
oil         166-172 power         cfm requirements         202 power power           Bypasses         61-66         combined with power vent         207 confined spaces           C         direct to burner fan-powered         207 powered           Cad cell         169 powered         207 powered           Can't reach fifty         116 powered         207 powered           Carbon monoxide power vent fan-powered         207 powered         207 powered           Carbon monoxide power vent fan-powered         207 powered         207 powered           Carbon monoxide power vent fan-powered         207 powered         208 powered           Carbon monoxide power vent fan-powered         207 powered         208 powered           Carbon monoxide power vent fan-powered         207 powered         208 powered           Carbon monoxide power vent fan-powered         207 powered         208 powered           Carbon monoxide power vent fan-powered         207 powered         208 powered           Carbon monoxide power vent fan-powered         200 powered         200 powered           Carbon monoxide power vent fan-powered         200 powered         200 powered           Carbon monoxide power vent fan power vent fan power vent fan power vent fan power f	gun-type oil	177	Combustion air 184	, 201-207
Description   177, 207   Combined with power vent   207   Confined spaces   203-205   direct to burner   207   fan-powered   207   fan-powered   207   fan-powered   208   direct to burner   208   direct to burner   207   fan-powered   207   fan-powered   208   direct to burner   208   direct to burner   207   fan-powered   207   fan-powered   207   fan-powered   207   fan-powered   207   fan-powered   207   fan-powered   208   direct to burner   207   fan-powered   207   fan-powered   207   fan-powered   208   direct to burner   207   fan-powered   207   fan-powered   207   fan-powered   208   direct to burner   207   fan-powered   208   direct to burner   207   fan-powered   207   fan-powered   208   direct to burner   207   fan-powered   207   fan-powered   208   direct to burner   207   defined   208   defined   208   defined   208   defined   208   definition   202   def	nozzle for oil	169	and mobile-home furna	aces 286
Cad cell	oil	166-172	cfm requirements	202
Cad cell 169 methods of providing 203 mobile home furnaces 284 unconfined spaces 203 Combustion chamber 171 Combustion testing gas ranges 165 sampling gases 159 combustion cracks and for oil 160, 167, 215 testing 16 Caulking 288 interior cracks as of 63-67 CAZ 205 CFM50 defined 111 Chimney liners insulating 192 sizing 192 Chimneys 188-191 air sealing around 64 all-fuel 190 clearances 189 high-temperature plastic 195 masonry specifications 189 measures to improve draft 183 mobile homes 287 retrofit liners 191, 194 pressure-pan testing 100 methods of providing 203 methods of providing 203 mobile home furnaces 204 unconfined spaces 203 Combustion chamber 171 Combustion testing gas ranges 165 sampling gases 159 Combustion zone definition 202 depressurization 61, 111 Consumption of energy 38-39 Cooling A/C maintenance 266-270 Refrigerant testing 270-281 Crawl spaces insulation and air-sealing 91-93 thermal boundary 137-139 ventilation 95 Dense-packed insulation 85-86 Diagnostics building shell 121-127 ducts 139-144 pressure-pan testing 140-142,	power	177, 207	combined with power v	rent 207
Cad cell 169 methods of providing 203 mobile home furnaces 284 unconfined spaces 203 Combustion chamber 171 Combustion testing gas ranges 165 sampling gases 159 testing 16 Caulking 288 interior cracks 67 uses of 63-67 CAZ 205 CFM50 defined 111 Chimney liners insulating 192 sizing 192 Chimneys 188-191 air sealing around 64 all-fuel 190 clearances 189 high-temperature plastic 195 masonry specifications 189 measures to improve draft 183 mobile homes 287 methods of providing 203 methods of providing 203 mobile home furnaces 284 unconfined spaces 203 Combustion chamber 171 Combustion testing gas ranges 165 sampling gases 159 Combustion zone definition 202 depressurization 61, 111 Consumption of energy 38-39 Cooling A/C maintenance 266-270 Refrigerant testing 270-281 Crawl spaces insulation and air-sealing 91-93 thermal boundary 137-139 ventilation 95 Dense-packed insulation 85-86 Diagnostics building shell 121-127 ducts 139-144 retrofit liners 191, 194 pressure-pan testing 140-142,	Bypasses	61-66	confined spaces	203-205
Cad cell 169 Can't reach fifty 116 Carbon monoxide 14, 14-16 alarms 16 causes of 16 exposure limits 15 standard for oil 160, 167, 215 testing 16 Caulking 288 interior cracks 67 uses of 63-67 CAZ 205 CFM50 defined 111 Chimney liners insulating 192 sizing 192 Chimneys 188-191 air sealing around 64 all-fuel 190 clearances 189 high-temperature plastic masonry specifications measures to improve draft 183 mobile homes 287 methods of providing 203 methods of providing 203 mobile home furnaces 284 unconfined spaces 203 Combustion chamber 171 Combustion testing gas ranges 165 sampling gases 159 Combustion zone definition 202 depressurization 61, 111 Consumption of energy 38-39 Cooling A/C maintenance 266-270 Refrigerant testing 270-281 Crawl spaces insulation and air-sealing 91-93 thermal boundary 137-139 ventilation 95  Dense-packed insulation 85-86 Diagnostics building shell 121-127 ducts 139-144 pressure-pan testing 140-142,	C		direct to burner	207
Can't reach fifty 116 Carbon monoxide 14, 14-16 alarms 16 causes of 16 exposure limits 15 standard for oil 160, 167, 215 testing 16 Caulking 288 interior cracks 67 uses of 63-67 CAZ 205 CFM50 defined 111 Chimney liners insulating 192 sizing 192 Chimneys 188-191 air sealing around all-fuel 2learances 189 high-temperature plastic 195 masonry specifications 189 measures to improve draft 183 mobile home furnaces 284 unconfined spaces 203 Combustion chamber 171 Combustion testing gas ranges 165 sampling gases 159 Combustion zone definition 202 depressurization 61, 111 Consumption of energy 38-39 Cooling A/C maintenance 266-270 Refrigerant testing 270-281 Crawl spaces insulation and air-sealing 91-93 thermal boundary 137-139 ventilation 95 Dense-packed insulation 85-86 Diagnostics building shell 121-127 ducts 139-144 pressure-pan testing 140-142,			fan-powered	207
Can't reach fifty 116 Carbon monoxide 14, 14-16 alarms 16 causes of 16 exposure limits 15 standard for oil 160, 167, 215 testing 16 Caulking 288 interior cracks 67 uses of 63-67 CAZ 205 CFM50 defined 111 Chimney liners insulating 192 sizing 192 Chimneys 188-191 air sealing around all-fuel 190 clearances 189 high-temperature plastic 195 masonry specifications 189 measures to improve draft 183 mobile homes 287 mobile homes 14, 14-16 unconfined spaces 203 Combustion chamber 171 Combustion testing gas ranges 165 sampling gases 159 Combustion zone definition 202 depressurization 61, 111 Consumption of energy 38-39 Cooling A/C maintenance 266-270 Refrigerant testing 270-281 Crawl spaces insulation and air-sealing 91-93 thermal boundary 137-139 ventilation 95  Dense-packed insulation 85-86 Diagnostics building shell 121-127 ducts 139-144 pressure-pan testing 140-142,	Cad cell	160	methods of providing	203
Carbon monoxide alarms 16 causes of 16 exposure limits 15 standard for oil 160, 167, 215 testing 16 Caulking 288 interior cracks of 3-67 CAZ 205 CFM50 defined 111 Chimney liners insulating 192 sizing 192 Chimneys 188-191 air sealing around all-fuel 190 clearances 189 high-temperature plastic masonry specifications 189 measures to improve draft 183 mobile homes 287 mobile homes 287 mobile homes 287 more definition combustion testing gas ranges 165 sampling gases 159 Combustion zone definition 202 depressurization 61, 111 Consumption of energy 38-39 Cooling A/C maintenance 266-270 Refrigerant testing 270-281 Crawl spaces insulation and air-sealing 91-93 thermal boundary 137-139 ventilation 95 Dense-packed insulation 85-86 Diagnostics building shell 121-127 ducts 139-144 pressure-pan testing 140-142,			mobile home furnaces	284
alarms 16 causes of 16 exposure limits 15 standard for oil 160, 167, 215 testing 16 Caulking 288 interior cracks 67 uses of 63-67 CAZ 205 CFM50 defined 111 Chimney liners insulating 192 sizing 192 Chimneys 188-191 air sealing around 4 all-fuel 190 clearances 189 high-temperature plastic 195 masonry specifications 189 measures to improve draft 183 mobile homes 287 combustion testing gas ranges 165 sampling gases 159 Combustion zone definition 202 depressurization 61, 111 Consumption of energy 38-39 Cooling A/C maintenance 266-270 Refrigerant testing 270-281 Crawl spaces insulation and air-sealing 91-93 thermal boundary 137-139 ventilation 95  Dense-packed insulation 85-86 Diagnostics building shell 121-127 ducts 139-144 pressure-pan testing 140-142,			unconfined spaces	203
causes of exposure limits 15 standard for oil 160, 167, 215 testing 16 Caulking 288 interior cracks 67 uses of 63-67 CAZ 205 CFM50 defined 111 Chimney liners insulating 328 sizing 192 Chimneys 188-191 air sealing around 41l-fuel 190 clearances 189 high-temperature plastic masonry specifications 189 measures to improve draft 183 mobile homes 287 mobile homes 287 measures to improve draft limits standard for oil 160, 167, 215 sampling gases 159 Combustion zone definition 202 depressurization 61, 111 Consumption of energy 38-39 Cooling A/C maintenance 266-270 Refrigerant testing 270-281 Crawl spaces insulation and air-sealing 91-93 thermal boundary 137-139 ventilation 95 Dense-packed insulation 85-86 Diagnostics building shell 121-127 ducts 139-144 pressure-pan testing 140-142,			Combustion chamber	171
exposure limits 15 standard for oil 160, 167, 215 testing 16 Caulking 288 interior cracks of 63-67 CAZ 205 CFM50 defined 111 Chimney liners insulating sizing 192 sizing 192 Chimneys 188-191 air sealing around air sealing around all-fuel 190 clearances 189 high-temperature plastic masonry specifications 189 high-temperature plastic measures to improve draft 183 mobile homes 287 mobile homes 287 mobile homes 287 mobile homes 287 ducts 139-144 retrofit liners 191, 194  gas ranges 3165 sampling gases 159  Combustion zone definition 202 definition 202 definition 202 definition 302 Consumption of energy 38-39 Cooling A/C maintenance 266-270 Refrigerant testing 270-281 Crawl spaces insulation and air-sealing 91-93 thermal boundary 137-139 ventilation 95 Dense-packed insulation 85-86 Diagnostics building shell 121-127 ducts 159 Dense-packed insulation 85-86 Diagnostics 139-144 pressure-pan testing 140-142,			Combustion testing	
standard for oil 160, 167, 215 testing 16 Caulking 288 interior cracks 67 uses of 63-67 CAZ 205 CFM50 defined 111 Chimney liners insulating 192 sizing 192 Chimneys 188-191 air sealing around 64 all-fuel 190 clearances 189 high-temperature plastic 195 masonry specifications 189 high-temperature plastic 195 measures to improve draft 183 mobile homes 287 mobile homes 287 combustion zone definition 202 depressurization 61, 111 Consumption of energy 38-39 Cooling A/C maintenance 266-270 Refrigerant testing 270-281 Crawl spaces insulation and air-sealing 91-93 thermal boundary 137-139 ventilation 95  Dense-packed insulation 85-86 Diagnostics building shell 121-127 ducts 139-144 pressure-pan testing 140-142,			gas ranges	165
testing Caulking Combustion zone definition Consumption Of energy A/C maintenance Cabe-270 Refrigerant testing Crawl spaces insulation and air-sealing 91-93 thermal boundary 137-139 ventilation 95  Dense-packed insulation S5-86 masonry specifications measures to improve draft 183 mobile homes 287 ducts 139-144 pressure-pan testing 140-142,	·		sampling gases	159
Caulking 288 interior cracks 67 uses of 63-67 CAZ 205 CFM50 defined 111 A/C maintenance 266-270 Refrigerant testing 270-281 Crawl spaces insulating sizing 192 Chimneys 188-191 air sealing around all-fuel clearances 189 high-temperature plastic 195 masonry specifications 189 measures to improve draft 183 mobile homes 287 mobile homes 287 mobile homes 287 ducts 139-144 retrofit liners 191, 194 depressurization 202 depressurization 61, 111 Consumption of energy 38-39 Cooling A/C maintenance 266-270 Refrigerant testing 270-281 Crawl spaces insulation and air-sealing 91-93 thermal boundary 137-139 ventilation 95 Dense-packed insulation 85-86 Diagnostics building shell 121-127 ducts 139-144 pressure-pan testing 140-142,			Combustion zone	
interior cracks uses of  CAZ  CFM50  defined  Chimney liners insulating sizing  Chimneys air sealing around all-fuel clearances high-temperature plastic masonry specifications measures to improve draft mobile homes  191  consumption of energy 38-39  Cooling A/C maintenance 266-270 Refrigerant testing 270-281  Crawl spaces insulation and air-sealing 192 thermal boundary ventilation 95  Dense-packed insulation 85-86 Diagnostics building shell 121-127 ducts 139-144 pressure-pan testing 140-142,			definition	202
uses of CAZ 205 CFM50 defined 111 Chimney liners insulating 192 sizing 192 Chimneys 188-191 air sealing around all-fuel clearances high-temperature plastic masonry specifications measures to improve draft 183 mobile homes 287 mobile homes 287 mobile homes 287 more for energy 38-39 Cooling A/C maintenance 266-270 Refrigerant testing 270-281 Crawl spaces insulation and air-sealing 91-93 thermal boundary 137-139 ventilation 95  Dense-packed insulation 85-86 Diagnostics building shell 121-127 ducts 139-144 pressure-pan testing 140-142,	•		depressurization	61, 111
CAZ 205 CFM50 defined 111 Chimney liners insulating 192 sizing 192 Chimneys 188-191 air sealing around 64 all-fuel 190 clearances 189 high-temperature plastic 195 masonry specifications 189 measures to improve draft 183 mobile homes 287 mobile homes 287 mobile in a content of the mergy 38-39 Cooling A/C maintenance 266-270 Refrigerant testing 270-281 Crawl spaces insulation and air-sealing 91-93 thermal boundary 137-139 ventilation 95  Dense-packed insulation 85-86 Diagnostics building shell 121-127 ducts 139-144 pressure-pan testing 140-142,	_		Consumption	
CFM50 defined Chimney liners insulating sizing Chimneys air sealing around all-fuel clearances high-temperature plastic masonry specifications measures to improve draft mobile homes 287 defined A/C maintenance 266-270 Refrigerant testing 270-281 Crawl spaces insulation and air-sealing 91-93 thermal boundary ventilation 95  Dense-packed insulation 85-86 Diagnostics building shell 121-127 ducts 139-144 pressure-pan testing 140-142,			of energy	38-39
defined 111 A/C maintenance 266-270 Refrigerant testing 270-281 Crawl spaces insulating 192 sizing 192 Chimneys 188-191 air sealing around 64 all-fuel 190 clearances 189 high-temperature plastic 195 masonry specifications 189 measures to improve draft 183 mobile homes 287 retrofit liners 191, 194  A/C maintenance 266-270 Refrigerant testing 270-281  Crawl spaces insulation and air-sealing 91-93 thermal boundary 137-139 ventilation 95  Dense-packed insulation 85-86 Diagnostics building shell 121-127 ducts 139-144 pressure-pan testing 140-142,		203	Cooling	
Chimney liners insulating sizing 192 Chimneys 188-191 air sealing around all-fuel clearances high-temperature plastic masonry specifications measures to improve draft mobile homes 287 mobile homes 192 Crawl spaces insulation and air-sealing 91-93 thermal boundary 137-139 ventilation 95  Dense-packed insulation 85-86 Diagnostics building shell 121-127 ducts 139-144 pressure-pan testing 140-142,		111	A/C maintenance	266-270
insulating 192 crawl spaces insulation and air-sealing 91-93 thermal boundary 137-139 ventilation 95 air sealing around 64 all-fuel 190 clearances 189 high-temperature plastic 195 masonry specifications 189 measures to improve draft 183 building shell 121-127 mobile homes 287 ducts 139-144 retrofit liners 191, 194 crawl spaces insulation and air-sealing 91-93 thermal boundary 137-139 ventilation 95 beliation 95 ducts 137-139 ventilation 95 ducts 137-139 ventilation 95 ducts 137-139 ventilation 91-93 thermal boundary 137-139 ventilation 95 ducts 137-139 ventilat		111	Refrigerant testing	270-281
sizing 192 Chimneys 188-191 air sealing around 64 all-fuel 190 clearances 189 high-temperature plastic 195 masonry specifications 189 measures to improve draft 183 mobile homes 287 retrofit liners 191, 194  insulation and air-sealing 91-93 thermal boundary 137-139 ventilation 95  Dense-packed insulation 85-86 Diagnostics building shell 121-127 ducts 139-144 pressure-pan testing 140-142,		192	Crawl spaces	
Chimneys 188-191 thermal boundary ventilation 95 air sealing around 64 all-fuel 190 clearances 189 high-temperature plastic 195 masonry specifications 189 measures to improve draft 183 building shell 121-127 mobile homes 287 ducts 139-144 retrofit liners 191, 194 thermal boundary 137-139 ventilation 95  Dense-packed insulation 85-86 building shell 121-127 ducts 139-144 pressure-pan testing 140-142,			insulation and air-sealing	ng 91-93
air sealing around all-fuel 190 clearances 189 high-temperature plastic masonry specifications 189 measures to improve draft retrofit liners 191, 194  ventilation 95  D  Dense-packed insulation 85-86 building shell 121-127 ducts 139-144 pressure-pan testing 140-142,			thermal boundary	137-139
all-fuel 190 D  clearances 189 high-temperature plastic 195 Dense-packed insulation 85-86 masonry specifications 189 Diagnostics measures to improve draft 183 building shell 121-127 mobile homes 287 ducts 139-144 retrofit liners 191, 194 pressure-pan testing 140-142,			ventilation	95
clearances 189 high-temperature plastic 195 Dense-packed insulation 85-86 masonry specifications 189 Diagnostics measures to improve draft 183 building shell 121-127 mobile homes 287 ducts 139-144 retrofit liners 191, 194 pressure-pan testing 140-142,			D	
high-temperature plastic 195 Dense-packed insulation 85-86 masonry specifications 189 Diagnostics measures to improve draft 183 building shell 121-127 mobile homes 287 ducts 139-144 retrofit liners 191, 194 pressure-pan testing 140-142,				
masonry specifications 189 Diagnostics measures to improve draft 183 building shell 121-127 mobile homes 287 ducts 139-144 retrofit liners 191, 194 pressure-pan testing 140-142,			Dense-packed insulation	85-86
measures to improve draft 183 building shell 121-127 mobile homes 287 ducts 139-144 retrofit liners 191, 194 pressure-pan testing 140-142,				22 00
mobile homes 287 ducts 139-144 retrofit liners 191, 194 pressure-pan testing 140-142,				121-127
retrofit liners 191, 194 pressure-pan testing 140-142,	•		C	
		•		<b>-</b> ,

320 Index

Direct vent	209	protecting clients from 31
Doors	104-106	worker hazard 31
mobile home	302	E-F
repairing	105	<u></u>
replacement	105	Efflorescence 20
storm	106	Electric furnaces. See Furnaces,
weatherstrip	104	electric
Draft		Electrical safety 26
and duct improvements	184	Energy
measuring, illus.	159	consumption 38-39
over-fire	168	Energy auditing 39-42, 326
positive	195	Energy factor
strength of	175-183	water heating 52
types of	175-183	Excess air
Draft-proofing	60-67	oil burners 167
Drainage	95	Falls
Duct blower		preventing 14
measuring airflow	255-257	Fans
Duct-blower		ventilation, sealing 67
leak-testing	237-239	Fiberglass 31
Ducts	235-251	Filters
airflow	215	air, installation 212
and house pressures	145-147	maintenance 248-249
duct-blower testing	237-239	Flame-retention burners 171
evaluating leakage	235-243	Flexduct 251
finding leaks	242-243	Floors
improvements to solve	draft	insulation 90-91
problems	184	Flow hood 260
•	, 138, 139	Flue dampers. See vent dampers
leak testing	139-144	Flue-gas analysis 167
measuring airflow	255-260	Foam
mobile home leakage	290-291	liquid applied 89-93
pressure-pan testing	140-142,	Furnaces 233-251
239-241		electric 215
return, blocked	147	installation 210-212
sealing	215	mobile homes 284-288
sealing boots and regist		mobile-home 286
sealing chases	65	replacement 210-212
sealing leaks	243-246	sealing holes in 212
static pressure	260-262	
Dust	2.5	
and respirators	25	
lead	23-25	

G-H measuring 111 problems with 107 reducing Gas burners 184 clocking gas meter 161 maintenance/service 157-164 operation of 159 IAQ. See indoor air quality Gauges Indoor air quality 14-25, 118-120 blower door 113 worker Ground moisture barrier 20, 92, 94, Infiltration. See Air sealing, See Air 138, 298 leakage Hazardous materials Injuries protective equipment 25, 32 preventing 26-35 Hazards risk of 13 avoiding 13-35 Inspection, final 44 Health and safety 13-35 Insulation 68-93 communication 13, 27-28, 32 attic 70 - 80**MSDS** 32 dense-packed cellulose 85-86 worker 26-35 77 facing Health risks 13 foam 89-93 Heat exchangers hydronic pipe 224 mobile-home furnaces 286 hydronic piping 219, 222 Heat pumps 215 mobile home 293-296 Refrigerant testing 270-281 51 pipe 230-232 room steam piping 219, 222 Heat rise 210 to reduce condensation 21 Heating systems wall 82-88 combustion safety 157-172 water heaters 50 electric 215 Insulation coverage, calculating 72 forced-air 233-251 Intermediate zones hot-water 217 defined 111 216-225 hvdronic J-M mobile homes 284-288 oil-fired 166-172 Job book 326 replacement 209-225 Kneewalls 63 room heat pumps 230-232 Ladders steam 219-222 safety 33-34 High limit 211 Lead paint 23-25 hot-water heating 218 Lead-safe weatherization 23-25 221 steam Leakage area 116 House pressures Lights duct-induced 145-147

recessed

113

146

65

322 Index

intermediate zones

limits

Low-limit	224	tion standards	184
Lungs		National Safety Council	33
protecting	31	Natural gas	
Magnahelic. See Manome	ters, ana-	leak testing	161
log		NFPA. See National Fire Prot	ection
Make-up air	184	Association	
Manometer 257	, 258, 260	Occupational Safety and Heal	th Ad-
Manometers		ministration	27
analog	113	Oil burners 166-17	72, 177
digital	112	air filter	169
hose connections	111	excess air	167
Material Safety Data Shee	ts 28, 32	ignition	167
Mildew	20	maintenance/adjustment	
Minimum ventilation star	ndard	169-170	
See Building tightness l	imits	nozzles	169
Mobile homes	283-304	parts of	170
air sealing	288-289	performance indicators 16	0,167,
air-leakage locations	289	215	
construction/compone	nts 283	spray pattern	171
doors	302	Oil filters	169
duct leaks	290-291	Oil pressure 16	60, 167
duct pressure testing	293	Over-fire draft	168
furnaces	284-288	D 0	
insulation	293-296	P-Q	
skirting	304	Paint	
windows	300-301	failure	20
Mobile-home furnaces	286	lead	23-25
Moisture			
and health	19	•	9, 222
barriers, ground 20, 9	4, 95, 138	Plumbing penetrations sealing around	63
		seaming around	03
problems	18-23	•	
problems source reduction	21-22	Porch roof	120
-		Porch roof testing air leakage through	
source reduction sources	21-22	Porch roof testing air leakage through Power burners	207
source reduction	21-22 18-19	Porch roof testing air leakage through Power burners and venting	207 177
source reduction sources water leaks Mold	21-22 18-19 20-21 20	Porch roof testing air leakage through Power burners and venting Power venters 194, 19	207
source reduction sources water leaks	21-22 18-19 20-21 20	Porch roof testing air leakage through Power burners and venting Power venters 194, 19	207 177 97-199
source reduction sources water leaks Mold MSDS. See Material Safety Sheet	21-22 18-19 20-21 20	Porch roof testing air leakage through Power burners and venting Power venters 194, 19 Pressure measuring differences in	207 177 97-199 112
source reduction sources water leaks Mold MSDS. See Material Safety	21-22 18-19 20-21 20	Porch roof testing air leakage through Power burners and venting Power venters 194, 19 Pressure measuring differences in measuring static	207 177 97-199 112 212
source reduction sources water leaks Mold MSDS. See Material Safety Sheet	21-22 18-19 20-21 20 y Data	Porch roof testing air leakage through Power burners and venting Power venters 194, 19 Pressure measuring differences in measuring static pan testing 140-142, 22	207 177 97-199 112 212 39-241
source reduction sources water leaks Mold MSDS. See Material Safety Sheet	21-22 18-19 20-21 20 y Data	Porch roof testing air leakage through Power burners and venting Power venters 194, 19 Pressure measuring differences in measuring static pan testing 140-142, 23 WRT notation	207 177 97-199 112 212 39-241 112
source reduction sources water leaks Mold MSDS. See Material Safety Sheet	21-22 18-19 20-21 20 y Data	Porch roof testing air leakage through Power burners and venting Power venters 194, 19 Pressure measuring differences in measuring static pan testing 140-142, 23 WRT notation zone leak-testing 12	207 177 97-199 112 212 39-241 112 25-127
source reduction sources water leaks Mold MSDS. See Material Safety Sheet	21-22 18-19 20-21 20 y Data	Porch roof testing air leakage through Power burners and venting Power venters 194, 19 Pressure measuring differences in measuring static pan testing 140-142, 23 WRT notation	207 177 97-199 112 212 39-241 112 25-127 arrier

pressures, See Diagnostics	3	Sealed-combustion	209
Pressure pan testing	140-142,	water heaters	52
239-241		Siding	
Pressure tank	223	removal	84
and pump	223	Skirting	
Pressure tanks	217	mobile home	304
Pressure. See also House p	ressures	Smoke alarms	16
Pressure-relief valve	217, 224	Smoke detectors	14
Propane	193	Smoke number	160, 167
finding leaks	164	Soffits	
water heaters	49	kitchen	63
Pumps		Static pressure	260-262
hydronic, installation	223	Steady-state efficiency	160, 167,
•		171, 215	
R-S		testing for	167
D 11: -1.4.	(5	Steam heating	219-222
Recessed lights	65	Steam traps	220, 222
Refrigerant	251 250	Stick pins	247
Charge testing	271-278	Storm doors	106
Weighing in	279-281	Storm windows	
Refrigeration cycle	265	exterior	99-100
Refrigerators		mobile home	300-301
assessment and replace	ment	Stoves	000 001
53-55		combustion testing	165
setpoints	53	Subcooling test	277-278
*	25, 29, 31	Superheat test	272-274
Rim joists		-	2,2 2,1
insulation	89-90	T-V	
Safety			
commitment to	27-28	The Energy Conservatory	258
	14, 27-28	Thermal boundary	
electrical	14, 26	basements and crawl sp	aces
ladders	33-34	137-139	
new employees	28	flaws in	59
preventing falls	14, 33-34	ideal location	130
tools	35	Thermal boundary. See In	sulation,
vehicles	29	See Air barrier	
worker	26-35	Thermal bypasses	
Safety and health	13-35	locations of	61-66
Safety ladders	14	sealing	61-66
Saving-to-Investment-Rat	io 326	Thermal resistance	
Scaffolding		improving	68-100
safety	34	Tools	
		safety	35

324 Index

TrueFlow <sup>®</sup>	258	mobile home
Vehicle safety	29	repair and weatherstrip
Vent connectors	186-188	replacement
clearances	188	Wood decay
materials	186	Wood heating
specifications	186	clearances
Vent dampers	219, 220	inspection checklist
Ventilation		Wood stoves
attic	71-72	UL-listed
crawl spaces	95	Worst-case depressurization
determining need for	120	177
mechanical	22-23	Worst-case draft test
See also Building tightr		177-183
Venting		Zones
AGA categories	193	input vs. reference
atmospheric	184-192	intermediate
fan-assisted	193-195	pressure testing
for condensing furnace		simple pressure test
high-temperature plast		simple pressure test
mobile-home furnaces	286	
problems	195	
sealed-combustion		
	196, 286	
Venting. See also Ventilat	1011	
W-Z		
Walls		
dense-packing	85-86	
inspection	82-83	
insulation	82-88	
Water	02-00	
	20. 21	
leakage	20-21	
Water heaters	49-52	
insulation	50	
replacement	52	
sealed-combustion	52	
Weatherstrip		
attic hatches	65	
doors	104	
windows	101-102	
Windows	95-103	
double-hung, weatheriz	zing	
102-103	J	
	00 100	

exterior storm 99-100

### WEATHERIZATION WORK FLOW

#### Inspect, measure, and evaluate, then...

**Inspect home exterior:** Note condition of roof, chimney, roof vents. Inspect windows, doors, siding, foundation. Assess site drainage, and note evidence of moisture accumulation (page 42).

**Interview client:** Determine primary fuel, and get utility billing information. Ask about health and safety problems (page 13), comfort issues, and problems with heating systems.

**Test heating system:** Measure carbon monoxide, worst-case spillage and/or draft, heat rise, and combustion efficiency (page 157). Inspect chimney and venting system (page 184).

**Inspect home interior:** Look for health and safety problems, large air leaks (page 60), and moisture problems (page 18). Note wall, ceiling and floor insulation levels (page 68).

**Evaluate baseload measures:** Measure refrigerator consumption (page 54). Count incandescent lights, and ask about hours of use. Measure hot water temperature and shower flow.

**Perform pressure diagnostics:** Perform a blower door CFM<sub>50</sub> test(page 115). Calculate Building Airflow Standard (page 118). Assess zone and room pressures (page 128).

**Evaluate ducts:** Perform pressure-pan test (page 140), smoke test, and/or duct-induced room pressure test (page 145). Inspect duct connections, evaluate need for duct insulation.

#### ...strategize, decide, and install.

**Develop a whole-house strategy:** Review all your observations to formulate a practical strategy for weatherization. Identify critical health and safety issues.

**Communicate with the client:** Discuss the proposed weatherization activities. Educate clients on actions they can take to reduce consumption (page 45). Include client feedback in your decision-making.

**Improve heating:** Perform repairs or adjustments if needed to reduce carbon monoxide production (page 157). Repair venting and chimney system if needed. Make efficiency improvements where possible.

**Repair and insulate:** Reduce moisture sources (page 18). Repair large air leaks to prevent insulation from filling unwanted areas (page 61). Insulate ceiling, walls, floor, and foundation as cost-effective (page 68).

**Reduce baseload energy usage:** Replace refrigerator and/or adjust temperatures (page 53). Wrap water heater and set water-heater temperature. Install energy-saving shower head (page 52). Install CFLs (page 55).

**Seal air leaks:** Seal major air leaks, especially in ceiling, floor, and foundation (page 61). Re-test to evaluate Building Airflow Standard(page 118).

**Improve ducts:** Seal duct leaks, especially those that can cause depressurization. Improve duct airflow if needed to reduce duct-induced room pressures (page 145). Insulate ducts located outside the thermal boundary.

#### **OTHER SATURN PUBLICATIONS**

#### Residential Energy: Cost Savings and Comfort for Existing Buildings —

Residential Energy is a readerfriendly reference text that strives to give readers a broad understanding of energy usage and conservation in all types of residential buildings. Residential Energy provides explanations, discussions, and principles that all energy specialists must have to understand how buildings function as integrated systems. 320 pages.



#### Your Mobile Home: Energy and Repair Guide for Manufactured Housing —

The best guidebook to

224 pages.

answer your questions about mobile and manufactured homes. Contains the collective experience of many experts in construction, weatherization, and repair. More than 200 drawings, photos, charts, and graphs complement the easy-to-understand writing, to make technical information readily understandable. A must-have book for mobile home owners.



#### Your Home Cooling Energy Guide

Our illustrated cooling manual explores all the options for shading, ventilation, awnings, sun screens, window films, radiant barriers, insulation, reflective coatings, and shade trees to reduce cooling costs. It also explains how to main-



tain air conditioners and evaporative coolers for maximum performance and efficiency. The book has checklists, tables, a glossary, several informative appendices, and illustrations on almost every page. 80 pages.

#### Survivina the Seasons —

Surviving the Seasons (STS) contains the most important information needed by consumers to save energy in the home. STS doesn't try to list all possible energy ideas and methods, but it does focus on the most reliable and effective energy retrofits.



This highly illustrated booklet also provides solid advice for homeowners who plan to design and build a new home. 36 pages.

#### Residential Ventilation Systems

Residential Ventilation Systems outlines step by step procedures for properly choosing, designing and installing ventilation systems. Topics include moisture management, improving building durability, installing bath and kitchen fans, installing heat



recovery ventilators, sizing ventilation systems, and designing duct systems. 26 pages.

#### Residential HVAC Systems —

Residential HVAC Systems describes step-by-step methods for choosing, designing, and tuning furnaces, heat pumps, and air conditioners. Topics include evaluating and improving combustion efficiency, optimizing refrigerant charges, testing and



improving airflow, and procedures for testing, sealing, and insulating ducts. Includes our acclaimed trouble-shooting flow chart for improving HVAC efficiency. 34 pages.

## **Order Form**

Title	Quantity	\$ Each	Total
Residential Energy: Cost Savings and Comfort for Existing Buildings—Fourth Edition		\$35.00	
<b>Your Mobile Home:</b> Energy and Repair Guide for Manufactured Housing—Fourth Edition		\$19.95	
Your Home Cooling Energy Guide: First Edition		\$12.50	
<b>Surviving the Seasons:</b> The Saturn Energy Saving Guidebook		\$12.00	
Tech Brief: Residential Ventilation Systems		\$15.00	
Tech Brief: Residential HVAC Systems		\$15.00	
		Sub total	
Check, Money Order, Visa, or Mastercard ONLY  VISA  MasterCard		ss Discount	
		Shipping	
		Total	

Order subtotal	Discount	Shipping
\$99 or less	0%	\$6
\$100-\$199	0%	\$12
\$200-\$449	5%	\$27
\$450-699	10%	\$40
\$700-949	20%	\$65
\$950-\$1599	30%	\$100
\$1600-\$2299	40%	\$140
\$2300 or more	50%	Please call
	\$99 or less \$100-\$199 \$200-\$449 \$450-699 \$700-949 \$950-\$1599 \$1600-\$2299	\$99 or less 0% \$100-\$199 0% \$200-\$449 5% \$450-699 10% \$700-949 20% \$950-\$1599 30% \$1600-\$2299 40%



**Fax:** 406-442-1316

Web site: www.srmi.biz E-mail: orders@srmi.biz

Mail:

Saturn Resource Management, Inc. 324 Fuller Ave. Suite N-13 Helena, MT 59601-9984

Attach check or money to this order or fill in the credit card information below.

Visa/Mastercard: #		
Expiration date:	/	Name on card:
		Shipping address
Name		
Company		
Address		
City, State, Zip		
Telephone number:		



MISSOURI DEPARTMENT OF NATURAL RESOURCES